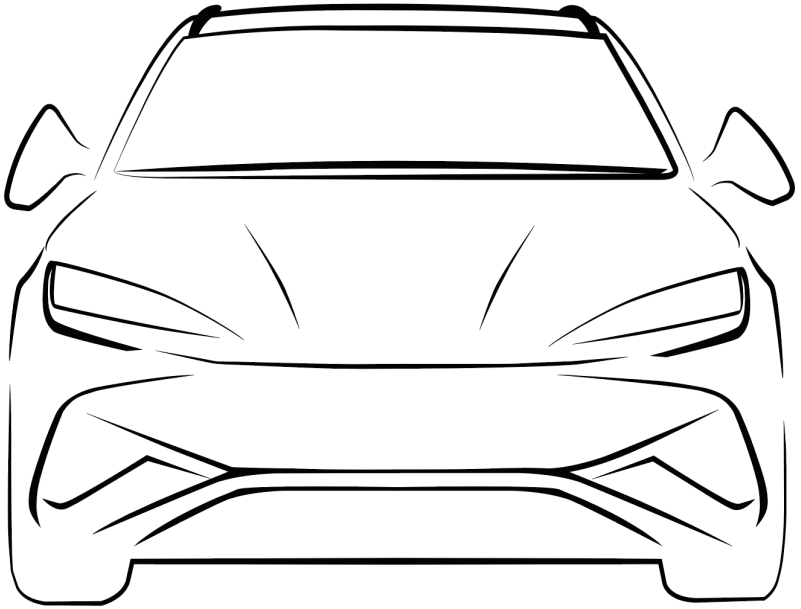
BYD SEALION 7

OWNER'S MANUAL



Foreword

Thank you for choosing BYD. To better use and maintain the vehicle, please read this manual carefully and keep it for future reference.

Special instructions: BYD Auto Co., Ltd. recommends that you choose genuine spare parts and use, maintain, and repair the vehicle in accordance with this manual. The use of non-genuine spare parts to replace or modify the vehicle will affect the performance of the entire vehicle, especially its safety and durability. Vehicle damage and performance issues caused thereby will not be covered by the warranty. In addition, vehicle modifications may also violate national laws and regulations and local government regulations.

Thank you again for choosing BYD. Your valuable comments and suggestions are welcome. To enjoy better services, please provide your accurate contact information. If there is any change to the information, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in a timely manner to update the information in the system. You are also advised to pay attention to the relevant national laws and regulations and local policies, and register the vehicle as soon as possible; otherwise vehicle registration may fail.

The descriptions marked with the asterisk (*) in this manual are specific to only some model configurations, and applicable only when the vehicle has these configurations. If there is any difference with the vehicle you purchased, the configuration of the actual vehicle shall prevail.

Pay attention to the "WARNING", "CAUTION", and "REMINDER" symbols in this manual, and follow the instructions carefully to avoid injury or damage. These symbols are defined as follows:

WARNING

Items that must be observed to ensure personal safety.

CAUTION

Items that must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle.

REMINDER

Items that must be observed to facilitate maintenance.

is a safety mark to indicate an operation that should not be performed or an event that should not happen.

This manual is expected to help you use the product correctly, and does not provide any description of the configuration and software version of this product. For details about the product configuration and software version, please refer to the contract (if any) related to this product, or consult the dealer who sold the product to you.

Sustainability

As a pure electric passenger vehicle, BYD SEALION 7 is an environmentally friendly product. Please visit https://reach.bydeurope.com for environmental protection information about the vehicle.

Everyone has the responsibility to protect the environment. Please use this vehicle properly and dispose of any waste and cleaning materials according to the corresponding local laws and regulations.

Contact Us

If you require assistance or clarification on policies or procedures, please contact the customer service center.

E-mail: Autoservice.contact@byd.com

Call 00800-10203000 for 24/7 roadside assistance or customer service (9:00–18:00, Monday–Saturday).

Copyright © BYD Auto Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

No part of this document may be reproduced, copied, stored, translated, or transmitted electronically or in any other form without prior written consent and authorization of BYD Auto Co., Ltd.

All rights reserved

Illustration Index

Exterior.....7
Dashboard..... 8
Interior..... 9
Doors..... 10

Safety

Seat Belts.....12
Seat Belt Overview..... 12
Using Seat Belts.....12
Airbags..... 15
Airbag Overview..... 15
Airbag Types..... 16
Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions.....18
Child Restraint System.....21
Child Restraint System.....21
Anti-theft Alarm System.....27
Anti-theft Alarm System.....27
Data Collection and Processing..... 28
Data Collection and Processing.....28

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster..... 34
Instrument Cluster View.....34
Instrument Cluster Indicators.....35

Controller Operation

Doors and Keys.....46
Keys.....46
Locking/Unlocking Doors..... 50
Smart Access and Start System..... 58
Child Protection Lock.....60
Seats.....60
Seat Precautions..... 60
Adjusting Front Seats..... 61
Folding Rear Seats.....64
Adjusting Rear Seat Head Supports..... 64
Steering Wheel..... 65
Steering Wheel Switches.....65
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....67
Wipers..... 68
Wiper Switch.....68
Replacing Wiper Blades..... 69
Mirrors.....70
Interior Rearview Mirrors..... 70
Side Mirrors.....71
Switches..... 72
Light Switches..... 72
Driver's Door Switches..... 74
Window Control Switch on Passenger's Side.....75
Odometer Switch..... 76
Driver Assistance Switches..... 76
Mode Switches..... 76
Front Passenger Airbag Switch..... 77
Hazard Warning Light Switch.....78
Sunshade Switches..... 78
Emergency Call (E-Call).....79
Interior Light Switch.....80

Using and Driving

Charging/Discharging Instructions.... 82
Charging Instructions.....82
Charging.....86
Discharging Instructions..... 93

Charging Port Immobilizer System.....95
Driving Range Display..... 96
Batteries..... 97
High-Voltage Battery..... 97
Low-Voltage Battery.....100
Usage Precautions..... 102
Break-in Period.....102
Trailer Towing.....102
Driving Safety Precautions.....103
Vehicle Use Suggestions..... 104
Saving Energy and Extending Vehicle Service Life.....105
Carrying Luggage..... 106
Wading into Water.....106
Fire Prevention..... 108
Starting and Driving.....109
Starting the Vehicle..... 109
Driving.....110
Gear Shift Controls.....111
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).....112
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH).....115
Driving Precautions.....116
Driver Assistance..... 119
Driver Assistance System Introduction.....119
Driving Assist..... 124
Forward Safety Assist.....135
Side Safety Assist.....146
Rear Safety Assist..... 154
Intelligent High Beam Control (IHBC).. 159
Head-up Display (HUD)*..... 160
Direct Tire Pressure Monitoring.....161
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS).....163
Around View Monitor (AVM)..... 163
Parking Assist System..... 165
Driving Safety Systems.....168
Intelligence Torque Adaption Control (iTAC) System*.....172
Driver Monitoring Systems (DMS).....173
Child Presence Detection (CPD)*.....174
Other Main Functions.....175
Dashcam*.....175

In-Vehicle Devices

Infotainment System..... 178
Infotainment Touchscreen.....178
Navigation Bar.....179
Gestures and Responses..... 179
OTA Update.....179
BYD Assistant..... 180
Bluetooth..... 180
Speakers..... 180
File Management.....181
Phone Projection.....181
A/C System..... 183
A/C Buttons.....183
A/C Operation Interface..... 183
Function Definition..... 185
Vents..... 187
Air Purification System*..... 188
BYD App..... 189
About BYD App.....189
Account Registration..... 189
Vehicle Condition and Control.....189
Individual Center and Vehicle Management.....190
Storage..... 190
Engine Compartment Storage..... 190
Door Bins..... 190
Glove Box..... 190

Center Console Storage Compartment....191
Cubby Box....191
Cup Holders....191
Seatback Pockets....192
Other Devices....192
Sun Visor....192
Grab Handles....192
12V Auxiliary Power....193
USB Ports....193
SD Card Slot....194
Wireless Phone Charger....194

Maintenance

Maintenance Precautions....198
Maintenance Cycle and Items....198
Regular Maintenance....200
Regular Maintenance....200
Vehicle Corrosion Prevention....201
Paint Maintenance Tips....201
Vehicle Cleaning....202
Interior Cleaning....204
Self-Maintenance....206
Self-Maintenance....206
Canopy Maintenance....208
Vehicle Storage....208
Hood....208
Cooling System....209
Braking System....210
Windshield Washer....210
A/C System....211
Wiper Blades....211
Tires....212
Fuses....215

When Faults Occur

When Faults Occur....218
Reflective Vest....218
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted....218
Emergency Shutdown System....218
Vehicle Fire Rescue....219
If the High-Voltage Battery Leaks....219
If the Vehicle Needs Towing....220
If a Tire Goes Flat....222

Technical Data

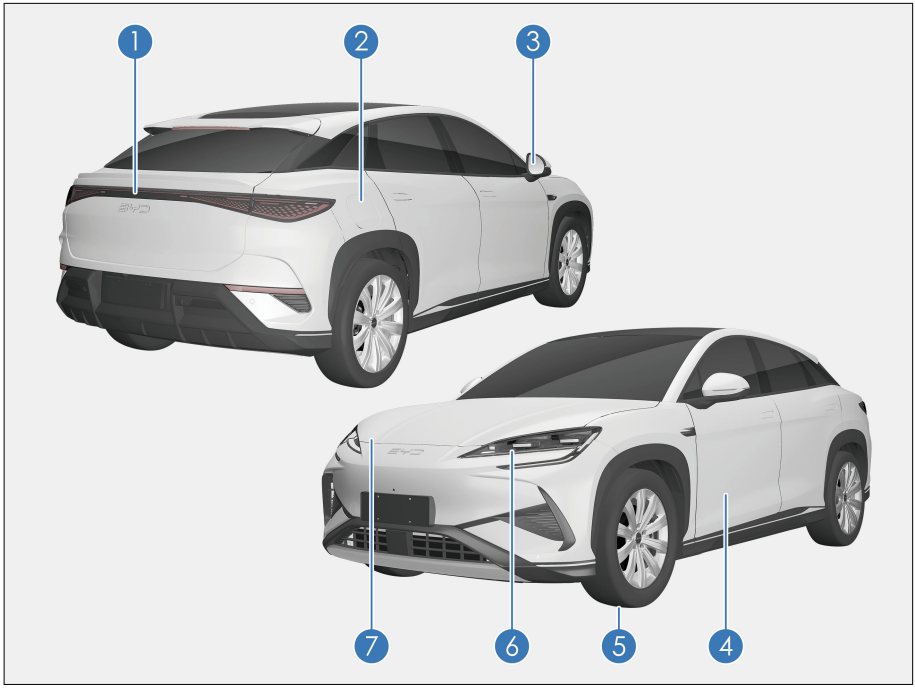
Vehicle Data....228
Specifications....228
Information....232
Vehicle Identification....232
Warning Labels....233
Declarations of Conformity....234
Declarations of Conformity....234

Abbreviations

Abbreviations....241

Illustration Index

Exterior



1 Trunk ***P54***

Carrying Luggage ***P106***

2 Using Mode 2 Charging Cable ***P86***

Using AC Charging Piles ***P89***

Using DC Charging Piles ***P90***

3 Power Side Mirrors ***P71***

4 Locking/Unlocking Doors ***P50***

5 Tire ***P212***

If a Tire Goes Flat ***P222***

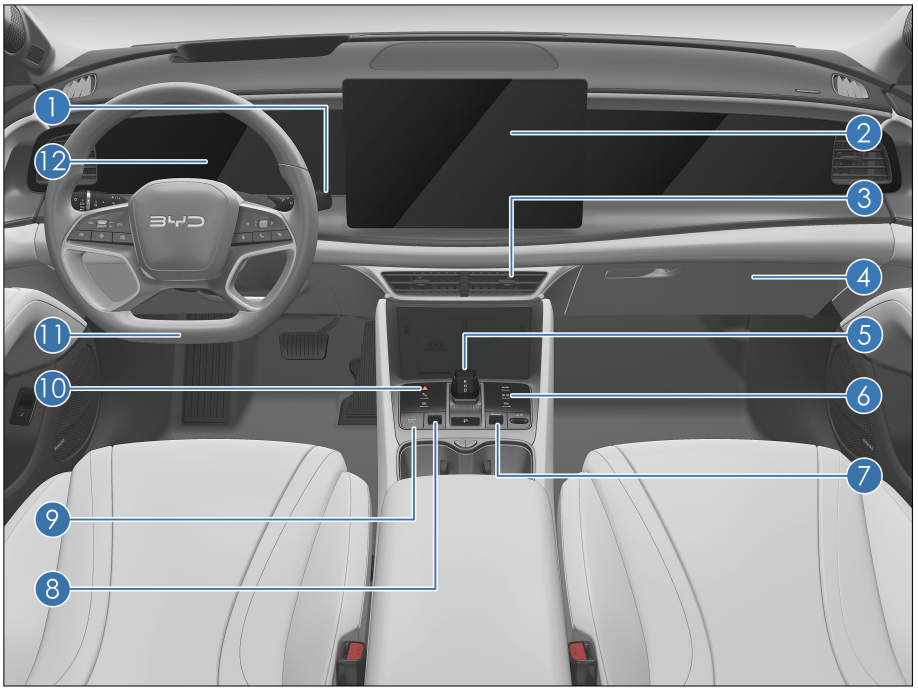
6 Combination Lights ***P72***

7 Hood ***P208***

Coolant ***P209***

Washer ***P210***

Dashboard



1 Wiper ***P68***

Wiper Blades ***P211***

2 Infotainment Touchscreen ***P178***

3 A/C Vent ***P187***

4 Glove Box ***P190***

5 Gear Shift Controls ***P111***

6 A/C Buttons ***P183***

7 Driving mode adjustment lever ***P76***

8 Regenerative braking adjustment lever ***P76***

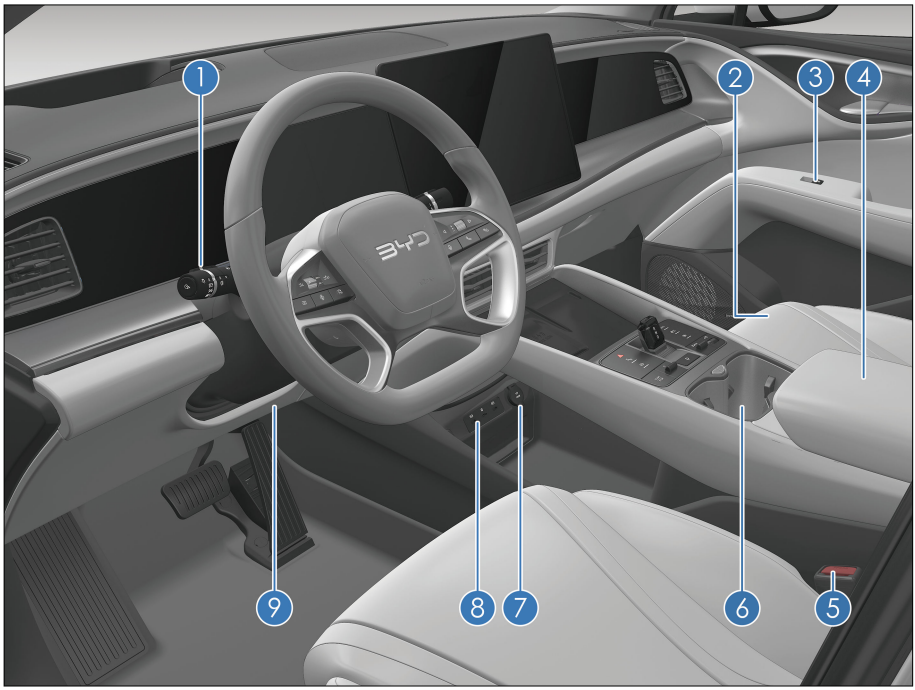
9 Starting the Vehicle ***P109***

10 Hazard Warning Light Switch ***P78***

11 Steering Wheel Switches ***P65***

12 Instrument Cluster ***P34***

Interior



1 Light Switches ***P72***

2 Seats ***P60***

3 Window Control Switch on Passenger's Side ***P75***

4 Cubby Box ***P191***

5 Seat Belts ***P12***

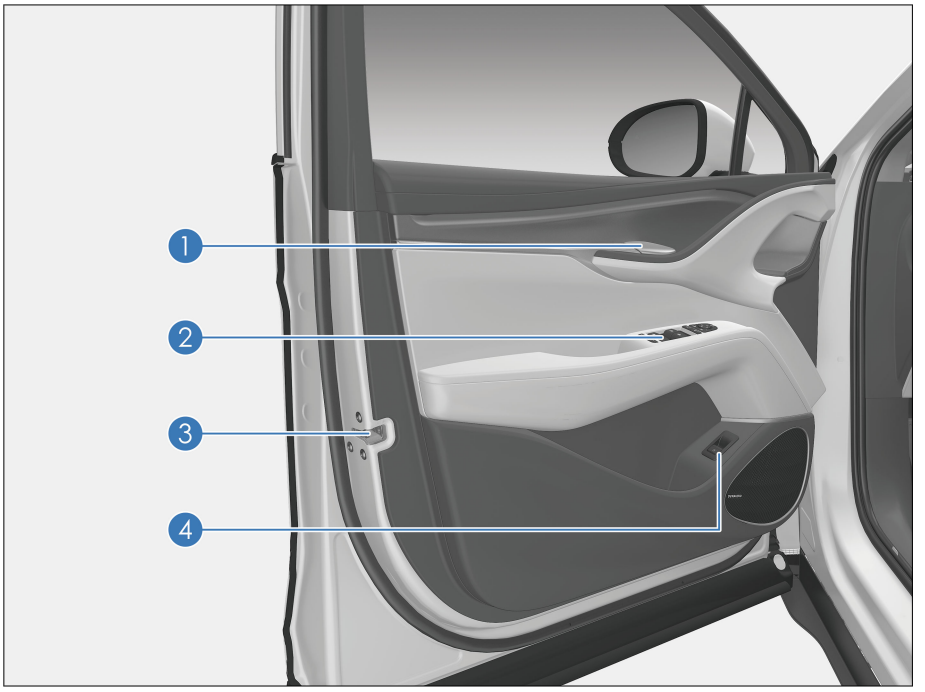
6 Front Seat Cup Holder ***P191***

7 12V Auxiliary Power ***P193***

8 USB Ports ***P193***

9 Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually ***P67***

Doors



1 Opening with Interior Door Handle ***P51***

2 Power Window Switches ***P74***

Central Locking ***P75***

Power Side Mirrors ***P71***

3 Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key ***P58***

4 Locking/Unlocking the Trunk ***P54***

01 SAFETY

Seat Belts..... 12
Airbags..... 15
Child Restraint System..... 21
Anti-theft Alarm System..... 27
Data Collection and Processing..... 28

Seat Belts

Seat Belt Overview

Studies have shown that proper use of seat belts can significantly reduce casualties in emergency braking, sudden steering or collisions. Read the following information carefully and observe it strictly.

WARNING

- Before driving, make sure all occupants are properly buckled up to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or in a collision.
- The seat belts are designed primarily to fit adults and are not intended for children. Make sure to choose a child restraint system appropriate for your child's age and size. (see ***P21***).
- If a seat belt is damaged or malfunctions, immediately contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.

- BYD has highly emphasized that all occupants should always fasten their seat belts while in the vehicle to prevent serious injury or death.
- It is recommended that children be seated in rear seats and always use seat belts and suitable child restraints. In case of emergency braking or a collision, unprotected children may be seriously injured and their lives may be endangered. Likewise, do not allow a child to be carried on someone's lap. This will render the children not adequately protected.

Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR)

- When the driver turns sharply or brakes suddenly, when there is a collision, or when the occupant leans forward too quickly, the seat belt automatically locks to effectively restrain and protect the occupant.
- When the vehicle travels smoothly, seat belts are pulled out and retracted as the occupants move slowly and smoothly, allowing the occupants to move freely.
- If the seat belt locks due to sudden retraction, pull on the seat belt webbing to create retractable slack in order to pull out the seat belt.

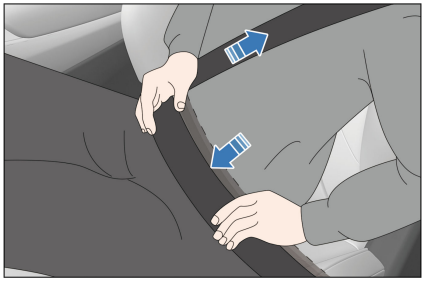
Pretensioner and Force Limiter Function

When a severe front collision occurs and the triggering conditions of the pretensioner are met, the pretensioner quickly retracts part of the seat belt and locks it to improve the protection of the occupant. The force limiter limits the seat-belt restraint force to the occupant's body to a certain extent so as to avoid injury to the occupant due to an excessive restraint force.

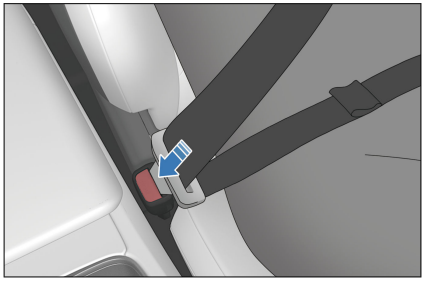
Using Seat Belts

1. Adjust the seat position and seatback angle (see ***P61***).
2. Adjust the position of the three-point seat belt.

- Keep the correct sitting posture and pull out the shoulder belt diagonally across the entire shoulder without contacting the neck or falling from the shoulder. Position the lap belt as low as possible around the hip.



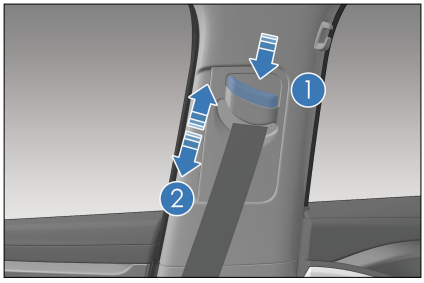
3. Insert the latch into the buckle until it clicks, and then pull it back to make sure it is firmly locked. Do not fasten the belt with any part of the strap twisted.



4. Adjust the height of the (front) seat belts for optimum comfort and protection.

① Press the adjuster release button.

② Move the adjuster up or down to the intended position. Release the button to lock the adjuster.



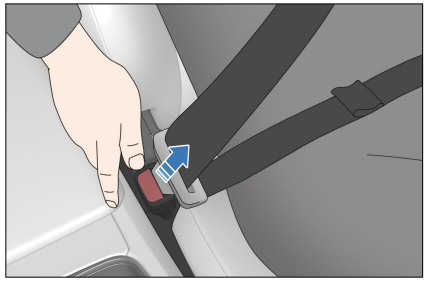
5. Pull the belt firmly to check that the adjuster is locked.

WARNING

- The shoulder belt should cross the center of the shoulder. The seat belt should be far from the neck and not be liable to slip from the shoulder, otherwise, it cannot function well in the event of emergency braking or accident and may even cause severe injury.
- The lap belt should be positioned as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury due to the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The seat belt should be fitted tight to the body for better protection.

6. Unlock the seat belt.

- Press the red unlock button on the buckle. The latch plate pops out, and the seat belt automatically retracts. If the seat belt does not retract smoothly and automatically, pull it out and check whether it is twisted.



WARNING

- One seat belt is for one occupant only. Do not allow multiple occupants (including children) to share one seat belt.
- Avoid traveling with the seatback leaning too far back. The seat belt

WARNING

protection performs best when the seatback is upright.

- Make sure that no seat belt or its spring bolt/buckle becomes pressed by the door; otherwise, the seat belt may be damaged.
- Check the seat belts regularly for cuts, wear, looseness, and other abnormalities. If any problem is found, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.
- Do not remove, disassemble or modify the seat belts.
- After an accident, have the seat belts checked at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. If the pretensioner function is activated, the seat belt must be replaced.
- In the event of a serious accident, even if there is no apparent damage, the seat belt should be replaced along with the seat assembly. The airbag system should also be thoroughly inspected.
- Pregnant women need to fasten the seat belts properly and position the lapbelt as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury from the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The method of wearing a rear seat belt is the same as that for a front seat belt. For normal functioning of the rear seat belt, ensure that its latch is inserted into the corresponding buckle during use. The driver should

WARNING

remind passengers to wear seat belts properly.

- Do not insert foreign objects such as coins and clips into the buckle as they prevent proper connection between the latch and buckle.

Seat Belt Reminders

If any occupant has not buckled up after the vehicle is started, visual and audible alarms go on and continue until the corresponding seat belt is properly fastened.

- Seat belt reminder main indicator
  - Any unfastened seat belt will trigger the main indicator to flash.
- Display of unfastened seat belt
  - The indicator for each corresponding seat will light up to display the position of the unfastened seat belt.
- Seat belt reminders
  - If the driver or any passenger has not buckled up after the ignition is switched on, the main seat belt reminder indicator and the indicator for the corresponding seat light up. When the vehicle is in motion and the driver or any passenger has not buckled up, the seat belt reminder indicator flashes and an audible alarm is given.
  - When the driver and all the passengers fasten the seat belts, the main indicator and the corresponding seat indicator turn off.

WARNING

- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact

WARNING

a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Do not use the corresponding seat until the functions return to normal.

- When driving, make sure all occupants have their seat belts properly fastened to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or in a collision.

Airbags

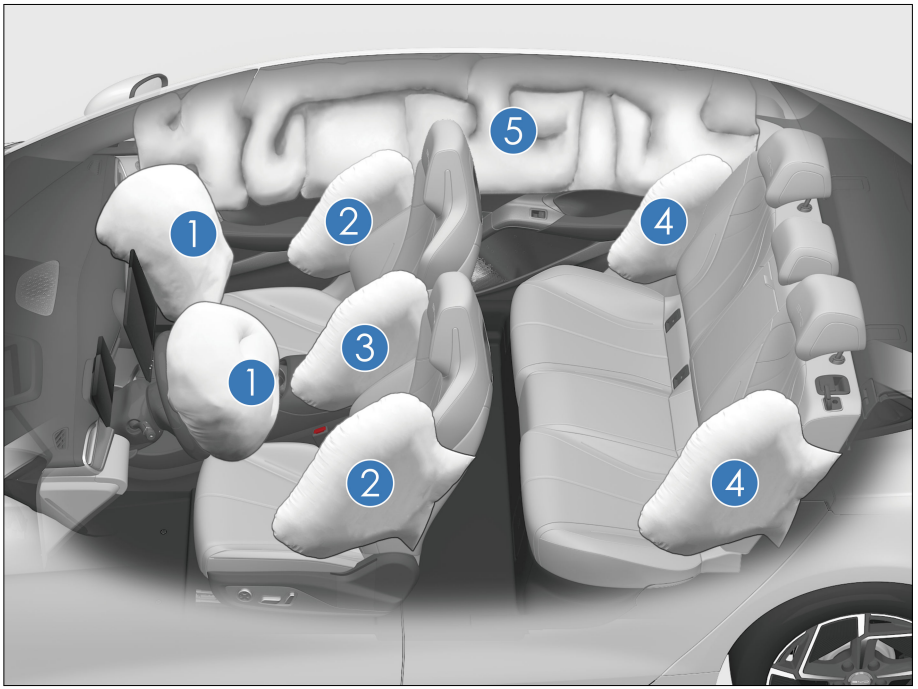
Airbag Overview

- The airbag system is a part of supplemental restraint system and also a supplement to seat belts. When the vehicle is involved in a serious collision and the airbag system meets its deployment conditions, relevant airbags will rapidly deploy, and along with seat belts, provide additional protection for heads and chests of the occupants, reducing likelihood of personal injuries or even death.
- Airbags are divided into front and side types according to the type of collision. The front airbags include a driver airbag and a front passenger airbag, while the side airbags include seat side airbags, a far side airbag, and side curtain airbags.
- As an integral part of the vehicle's passive safety protection system, the airbag system does not replace seat belts, and must be used in combination with seat belts to maximize protection.

WARNING

- Occupants must sit in a proper position to maximize the protection provided by seat belts and the airbag system.
- Do not disassemble or assemble airbag components.
- If the seatbacks get wet from rain or splashes, the side airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not use seat covers, as they restrict airbag deployment on the corresponding side in an accident.
- Do not place anything between the airbag and the occupant.
- Do not apply excessive force to the side of seats equipped with side airbags.
- After a collision, even if the airbag did not deploy, and the pretensioner did not lock the seat belt, to ensure the normal operation of the airbag system, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- If the vehicle is ingressed with water (wet carpet or vehicle submerged in water) or damaged by water, do not start the vehicle and the low-voltage battery needs to be disconnected. Otherwise, the airbags may deploy, resulting in serious injury or death.

Airbag Types



① Driver and front passenger airbags

② Front seat side airbags

③ Far side airbag

④ Rear seat side airbags

⑤ Side curtain airbags

Driver and Front Passenger Airbags

The driver airbag is mounted inside the steering wheel and the front passenger airbag is mounted inside the dashboard, both marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the airbag deploys to reduce the risk of injury.

Front airbag deployment

- In moderate to severe frontal crashes, a sensor detects a sharp deceleration and sends a signal to the ECU to trigger the front airbags.
- When there is a frontal crash, the seat belt secures the occupant's lower body and torso and the airbag cushions and protects the occupant's head and chest.
- When the severity of the impact does not reach the airbag deployment threshold, seat belts provide enough protection.
- The front airbag deflates immediately after inflation, without affecting the

driver's vision and ability to operate the steering wheel or other controls.

- Airbags can inflate rapidly when triggering conditions are satisfied to further protect drivers and occupants in an accident.
- A loud noise will be heard when the airbag deploys. It will not cause injury, but it may cause tinnitus or temporary deafness.
- The deployment of airbags may release smoke and dust. Although these substances are non-toxic, passengers with respiratory conditions may experience temporary discomfort. If the discomfort is severe, seek medical attention immediately.
- The front passenger airbag is controlled by the passenger airbag switch. See ***P77*** for details.

WARNING

- No accessories, such as telephone holders, cups, ashtrays, may be installed on airbag covers or within their action range. Otherwise, airbag deployment will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Seat Side Airbags

The seat side airbags are mounted on the outside of seatbacks, marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the airbag deploys to protect the chest of the occupant on the impacted side.

WARNING

- Do not allow the seatback to become wet, as moisture may impair the proper operation of the side airbags.
- Do not cover or replace the seatback covers by yourself. Using unsuitable or non-genuine seatback covers may interfere with side airbag deployment.
- When a side impact meets the system's deployment conditions, the side airbag on the impacted side will deploy.
- For optimal side airbag protection, occupants must have their seat belts fastened and sit upright against the seatback.

Far Side Airbag

The far side airbag is mounted in the inner edge of the driver's seat, marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the airbag deploys to protect the heads and shoulders of the driver and the front passenger.

WARNING

- If the impact occurs on the front passenger's side, the far side airbag deploys even if there is no passenger in the seat.
- For optimum far side airbag protection, the occupant must have their seat belt fastened and sit in an upright position.

Side Curtain Airbags

The left and right side curtain airbags are mounted at the junction of the body side trim and the ceiling and marked with "AIRBAG" on the B-pillar and C-pillar

trims. When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the side curtain airbag deploys to protect the head of the driver and the occupants.

WARNING

- For optimum curtain airbag protection, the occupant must have their seat belt fastened and sit in an upright position.

Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions

Airbag Triggering Conditions

- In the event of a vehicle collision, whether an airbag will be triggered is decided by factors such as the amount of collision energy, accident type, collision angle, obstacle type, and vehicle speed. The airbag system may be triggered in special collisions.
- The airbag system does not always work in any accident, and generally it will not be triggered in the event of a minor frontal collision, side collision, rear collision or rollover. In this case, the driver and passengers are protected by their properly fastened seat belts.
- Determinants of airbag system triggering: Decision is made by comparing the deceleration curve, generated in the collision and obtained by the electronic control unit (ECU) and the set value. If signals, such as the deceleration curve generated and measured in the collision, are lower than the respective reference values preset in the ECU, the airbag system will not be triggered even if the vehicle may have been seriously deformed in the accident.
- The ECU of the BYD airbag system has been set up with considerations of common misuse and road conditions. However, due to the increasing changes in causes and forms of vehicle collisions, for your safety, please strictly follow this user manual, use the vehicle correctly, and avoid its misuse. Otherwise, there is no guarantee that the airbags will achieve their expected effect.

Rollover Protection System

- If the vehicle experiences a side rollover accident that triggers the rollover protection system, the seat side airbags, far-side airbag, side curtain airbags, and seat belt pretensioners will be activated to protect the occupants and mitigate potential injuries.

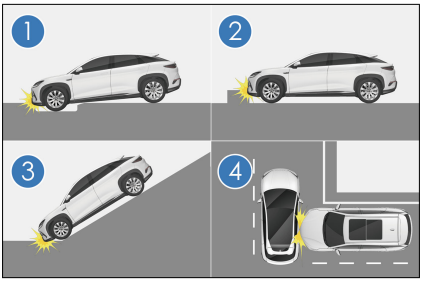
Cases When Airbags May Be Deployed

① The vehicle's nose hits the ground when crossing a deep groove.

② The vehicle hits a bump or curbstone.

③ The vehicle's nose hits the ground when going down a steep slope.

④ One side of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.



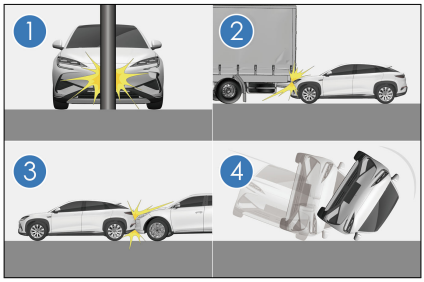
Cases When Airbags May Not Be Deployed

① The vehicle hits a concrete column, tree, or other slim objects.

② The vehicle goes under a truck or another large vehicle.

③ The tail of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.

④ The vehicle rolls over.

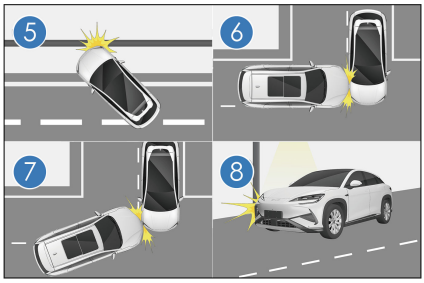


⑤ The vehicle hits a wall or a vehicle at a side other than the front side.

⑥ Parts other than the passenger compartment receive side impact.

⑦ The lateral side of the vehicle is hit diagonally.

⑧ The lateral side of the vehicle hits a columnar object.



WARNING

- Airbags are designed for specific models. Any changes to suspension, tire size, bumpers, chassis and factory-equipped devices may adversely affect the airbag system. Users must not use any parts of the airbag system on other vehicle models; doing so may lead to failure of the airbag system.
- Drivers should maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between their chest and the steering wheel, in order for the system to provide the most effective protection.
- After the airbag system deploys, hot gas resulting from the reaction will be discharged from the airbag vent port. Avoid touching any parts and keep the correct posture of holding the steering wheel, otherwise skin burns may occur.
- Fasten your seat belt and sit properly while the vehicle is in motion. If the seat belt is not fastened, and the occupant is leaning forward or sitting improperly, airbag deployment can increase the risk of injury.
- Do not paste stickers, cover, or decorate the button area or the center cap of the steering wheel, the surface of the dashboard at and near the location of the airbag, the surface of A, B, and C-pillar trims, or the surface at and near the location of side airbags. Clean these surfaces with a dry or damp cloth, without applying too much pressure.
- Children are not to be seated unprotected, nor are they to ride sitting on an adult's lap, to prevent serious injury or even casualty caused by airbag deployment.

WARNING

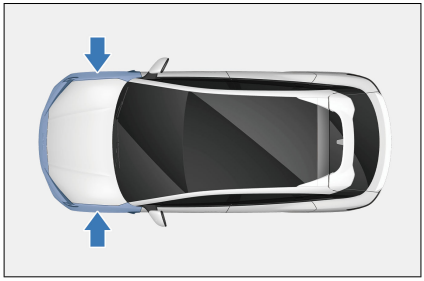
- Side airbags and side curtain airbags deploy quickly with high impact forces. Occupants must not lean against the doors of vehicles equipped with these airbags while these vehicles are in motion, because doing so may result in serious injuries or even death.
- Do not place any other accessories or items within the action range of side curtain airbags, including the windshield, side door glass, A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim and auxiliary handles. When the side curtain airbag deploys, the accessories or items will be thrown by the impact force from the side air curtain airbag, or the side curtain airbag may not deploy normally, resulting in serious injury or even death.
- When transferring vehicle ownership, make sure to pass on all of the vehicle's documents and keep the new ownership informed of airbag conditions.
- Do not modify or replace seats or trims of the seats with side airbags. These changes may prevent normal deployment of side airbags, and thereby cause airbag system failure or unintended deployment of side airbags, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Do not disassemble or repair the A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim or C-pillar trim, which contain side curtain airbags. These changes can cause failure of the airbag system or accidental deployment of curtain airbags, which may cause serious injury or even death.

WARNING

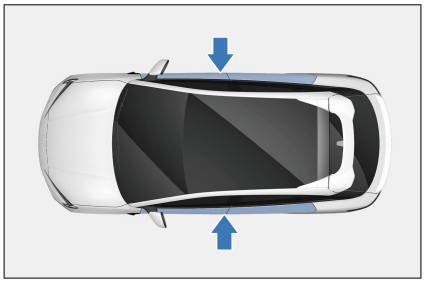
- Do not change any component of the airbag system, including any corresponding label. It is recommended that any operation done to the airbags be performed by a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Airbags can only provide one-time accident protection. Once the airbag is triggered or damaged, the airbag system must be replaced.
- Follow safety regulations and procedures related to the scrapping of parts of the vehicle or its airbag system.
- The airbag system has strong anti-interference and anti-disturbance resistance to electromagnetic fields around it. However, to avoid accidents, do not use the vehicle in an electromagnetic environment that violates national regulations.
- The airbag system of this vehicle is designed with full consideration of common misuses and road conditions. However, in order to avoid accidents, do not have the bottom of the vehicle impacted or drive roughly in harsh road conditions.
- This vehicle's airbag system has been fully verified to seamlessly match the vehicle's original wiring harness system. Any wiring harness modification or alteration may cause the airbags to deploy mistakenly under normal conditions or fail to deploy in the event of a collision.

It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately if any of the following situations occurs.

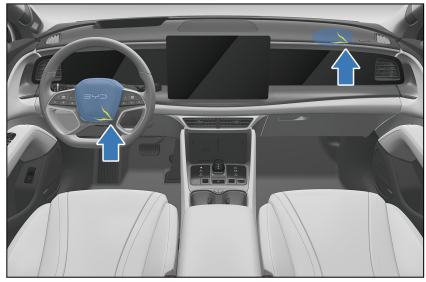
- Any airbag has deployed.
- Instrument cluster airbag warning light lights up abnormally.
- There is a collision with the front of the vehicle (highlighted area shown), but the airbags do not deploy.



- There is a collision with the doors of the vehicle (highlighted area shown), but the airbags do not deploy.



- The airbag cover (highlighted area shown) has been scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.



- The surface of the seat with a side airbag is scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.
- Decorative (liner) parts at A-pillar with built-in curtain airbags, roof beam and C-pillar are scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.
- Airbags need to be removed, disassembled, installed or repaired.

Child Restraint System

Child Restraint System

Child restraint systems provide good protection to your child in an accident. For child safety, please carefully read the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and this manual before installing a child restraint.

WARNING

- Never carry a child on your lap while travelling.
- Children must be secured in a suitable child restraint in a comfortable and safe way when traveling in the vehicle. Make sure that the child restraint is positioned, mounted, and used correctly.

WARNING

- After the child restraint is dismounted from the seat, store it safely in your vehicle.
- Failure to follow the instruction provided by the child restraint manufacturer and this manual may cause injuries and even death to your child in an accident.

Important considerations for selecting a child restraint

- The type and size is suitable for the child.
- The type and size is suitable for the seating position.
- The child restraint must meet the ECE R129 standard.

Front passenger airbag switch

- The switch is located on the passenger's side of the dashboard and is accessible when the passenger's door is open. See ***P77*** for details.

WARNING

- Never install a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated.

Child Restraint System Anchorages

The vehicle is equipped with ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages and top tether anchorages for child restraint systems.

Front passenger seat

- The front passenger seat is equipped with ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages, located below the anchorage markings (see illustration) on the seatback.



- The front passenger seat is equipped with a top tether anchorage on the back.



Rear outboard seats

- The rear outboard seats are equipped with ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages, located below the anchorage markings (see illustration) on the seatback.



- The outboard rear seats are equipped with top tether anchorages on the back.



REMINDER

- The ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages are located in the gap between the seat cushion and the seatback.

Installing Child Restraint Systems

1. Check the ISOFIX/i-Size anchorage point and install the child restraint on the seat.



WARNING

- When using the ISOFIX/i-Size anchorage, make sure that no foreign objects are around the anchoring point and that the seat belt is not stuck behind the child restraint; make sure that the child restraint is securely fixed. Otherwise, emergency parking or an accident may result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.

WARNING

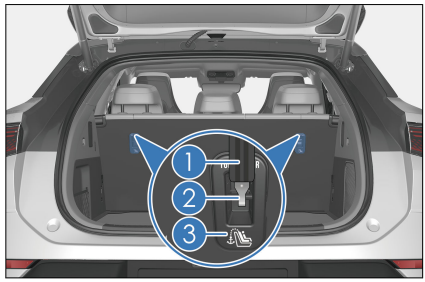
- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

2. To install a child restraint with a top tether, fasten the snap hook of the top tether to the anchor support, and tighten the top tether to ensure the strap is secured.

① Top tether

② Snap hook

③ Anchor support



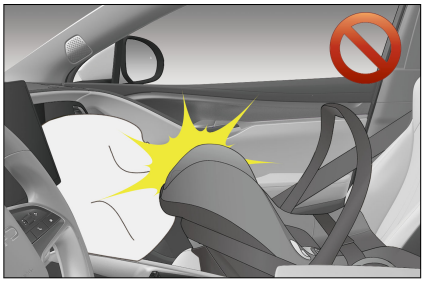
CAUTION

- When installing a child restraint system with a top tether on the front passenger seat, pass the top tether through the hole in the head support, and then tighten and secure it to the anchorage at the bottom of the seatback.
- When installing a child restraint system with a top tether on an outboard rear seat, route the top tether around the outer side of the head support post, and

⚠ CAUTION

then tighten and secure it to the corresponding anchorage.

- Never install a rear-facing child restraint on the seat protected by a front airbag (in the active state), otherwise in the event of an accident, the force of rapid deployment of the front passenger airbag will result in death or serious injury to the child.



Always follow the instructions below when using a child restraint on the front passenger seat:

- Never use a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. The airbag must be activated immediately after the rearward-facing child restraint system is dismounted from the front passenger seat.
- If necessary, adjust the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the child and vehicle interior.
- If necessary, adjust the front passenger seat height and seatback angle to ensure a stable installation of the child restraint system.
- When a forward-facing child restraint system is used on the front passenger seat, ensure that the seat is positioned fully rearward away from the active airbag.
- Ensure that the seat belt passes through the guide fitting without kinking and is not bent over the edge of the guide fitting.

Always follow the instructions below when using a child restraint on a rear seat:

- When the child restraint system is installed on any rear seats, front seats can be adjusted forward to ensure that the child is not in contact with the front seats. Meanwhile, the front seatback angle can also be adjusted to get more space.
- The head support can be adjusted or even removed to ensure that the vehicle seatback can stably support the child restraint system.
- When a child restraint is not equipped with the backrest, never remove the head support of the vehicle and be sure to adjust it to the locking position.
- When the child restraint installed on a rear outboard seat is with top tether, remove the cargo cover to have access to the top tether anchorage. Store the cover safely in your vehicle.
- For more installation instructions, please read the instructions provided with your child restraint system.

Seat belt, ISOFIX or i-Size CRS installing options in the vehicle:

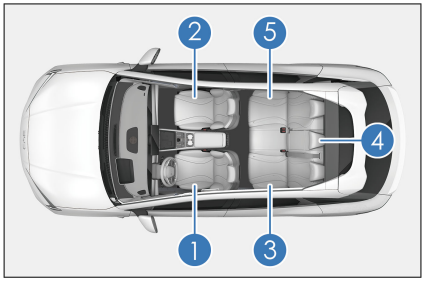
① Driver seat

② Front passenger seat

③ Rear left seat

④ Rear center seat

⑤ Rear right seat



Type	Seating Position					
	1	2		3 b)	4 b)	5 b)
		Front Passenger Airbag Activated a)	Front Passenger Airbag Deactivated a)			
Seating position suitable for universal belt (Yes/No)	×	Yes Forward-facing only	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	×	Yes Forward-facing only	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	×	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward-facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	×	No	R1/R2X/R2/R3	R1/R2X/R2/R3	No	R1/R2X/R2/R3

Type	Seating Position					
	1	2		3 [b]	4 [b]	5 [b]
		Front Passenger Airbag Activated [a]	Front Passenger Airbag Deactivated [a]			
Largest suitable forward-facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	×	F2X/F2/F3	F2X/F2/F3	F2X/F2/F3	No	F2X/F2/F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3/No)	×	B2/B3	B2/B3	B2/B3	B2/B3 Belt only	B2/B3

[a] If necessary, adjust the seat height and seatback angle of the front passenger seat to securely install the child restraint system.

[b] If necessary, adjust the height of the rear seat head support or remove it to avoid interference with the child restraint system. Do not remove the head support when using a booster cushion without a backrest. Also, ensure that the front seats are adjusted to avoid any contact with the child.

×: seat position not suitable for installing a child restraint for this group.

- Recommended child restraint systems:

Child Stature	Manufacturer	Child Restraint System	Installing method
40-83 cm	Maxi-Cosi	Pebble 360	Belt
76-105 cm	Britax Römer	Trifix 2 i-Size	ISOFIX and belt
100-150 cm	Britax Römer	Kidfix i-Size [a]	ISOFIX and belt
137-150 cm	Graco	Booster Max R129	Belt

[a]: For better protection, SecureGuard and XP-PAD are recommended.

Recommended child restraint systems for different height groups are shown in the illustration:

① 40-83 cm

② 76-105 cm

③ 100-150 cm

④ 137-150 cm



Anti-theft Alarm System

Anti-theft Alarm System

Arming the system

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. All occupants get off the vehicle.
3. Lock all doors and the anti-theft alarm system will arm automatically after 10 seconds.

Anti-theft yaw rate sensor*

- When the anti-theft alarm system is armed, the sensor monitors for changes in wheel lift or vehicle acceleration. If the sensor detects an attempt to steal or tow the vehicle, an audible and visual alarm is triggered.
- When the vehicle is being transported by ferry or train, the transport mode is activated, preventing the anti-theft yaw rate sensor from triggering an alarm.

Interior motion sensor*

- When the anti-theft alarm system is armed, if the system detects unauthorised entry into the cabin, it will trigger the lights to flash and the alarm to sound.
- To enable or disable the interior motion sensor, go to infotainment touchscreen → → **Vehicle** → **Cabin Perception**. By default, the function is enabled each time the vehicle is powered on.

Triggering the alarm

- The system, when armed, will raise an alarm* with flashing turn signals in any of the following situations:
  - Any door, trunk lid or hood is unlocked without using the smart key access function.
  - A mechanical key is used to open a door while the vehicle is locked.
  - The vehicles low-voltage power supply is cut off*.
  - The START/STOP button is pressed without a valid key inside the vehicle*.
  - The vehicle experiences a change in its horizontal axis (tilt angle or lift height meeting the alarm criteria)*.
  - Unauthorised entry into the cabin is detected by the interior motion sensor*.

Disarming the system

- Anti-theft alarm can be stopped by:
  - Unlocking the door with a valid smart key/NFC key/Bluetooth Digital Key*/App.
  - Using the microswitch to unlock the door by carrying a valid smart key.
  - Opening the trunk remotely with a valid smart key/Bluetooth Digital Key*/App.
  - Starting the vehicle remotely with a valid smart key/Bluetooth Digital Key*/App.

- Pressing the START/STOP button inside the vehicle while carrying a valid smart key.

WARNING

- Do not repair, replace or modify the components of the anti-theft system; such modifications may cause the system to malfunction or affect the terms of the insurance.
- If a fault occurs, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- When the interior motion sensor* is enabled, while it can notify of potential intrusions by flashing lights or sounding the alarm, it cannot fully prevent unauthorized entry. If an alert is triggered, promptly check for intrusions to minimize potential property loss.

CAUTION

- Misidentification or false alarm may occur. It is recommended to disable the interior motion sensor* in the following scenarios. The setting will remain effective until the vehicle is powered down.
  - High-pressure water jets or automated car wash systems are used.
  - The vehicle is being transported on trains, ships, or trailers.
  - The vehicle is parked in a multi-level garage.
  - There are moving objects inside the vehicle, such as pets, toys in motion, or operating fans.

Data Collection and Processing

Data Collection and Processing

- This section provides you with some important information on how personal data is collected and processed when you use a BYD vehicle.
- For a more detailed overview on data processing, data protection and data subject rights, please refer to the current version of the privacy policy for the vehicle available in the infotainment system (→ **System** → **Privacy policy**).
- This vehicle is equipped with an event data recording (EDR) system. EDR mainly records data in the event of a crash or near-crash (for example, airbag deployment or hitting on a roadside obstacle) to help comprehend the vehicle system operation, such as:
  - Vehicle velocity.
  - Tire pressure condition.
  - ACC status.
  - Whether the seat belt is fastened.
- The vehicle records EDR data only when there is a crash or when a near-crash event reaches a certain extent. The EDR does not record any data during the normal driving of the vehicle.
  - The data recorded by the EDR system provides an understanding of the state of the vehicle's safety-related systems when an accident occurs, so that relevant parties can analyze the accident.

- The EDR data needs to be accessed and read by special equipment. BYD will not disclose your personal data to third parties unless this is legally permissible or you have consented to it. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third-party agencies with professional equipment (such as government agencies) can also read the EDR data if they have access to the vehicle EDR and equipment (for example, they can read the data of SRS control unit to clarify the accident).

Vehicle Data Processing

- Data is collected when the vehicle is used, such as data collected or transmitted by vehicle sensors or control units, which is necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle.
- In some cases, the data is used to support driving (driver assistance systems) or to enable a specific comfort or infotainment function.
- Personal data that is collected and processed mainly include in-vehicle data, remote-services-related data, and other data, as further specified below.

In-vehicle data

Operation data

- When the vehicle is used, various vehicle status data (concerning speed, battery level, and the braking system) or environment data (including distance sensors and temperature) are collected and processed.
- This data is not usually stored, but there are control units, sensors or other components installed in the vehicle that record such data, for example, to record maintenance requirements, error messages, or other information.
- The in-vehicle data will only be stored in the equipment in the vehicle but can be read out via the legally required OBD ("On Board Diagnostics") interface, for example, by BYD authorized dealer or service provider or other third parties.
- In case this access takes place during vehicle maintenance, the information can also be transmitted to BYD engineers for quality assurance, product defect reports, or customer claim verification.

Remote-services-related data

Remote monitoring services

- The vehicle has remote monitoring services. These include remote diagnosis and over-the-air (OTA) updates and upgrades for security and safety purposes (subject to owner's approval).
- These monitoring services serve the following purposes: service provision (remote support/diagnostics), product development, and security/public safety.
- Depending on the country and setup, various vehicle information can be transmitted to BYD's data center in corresponding market for the above purposes, including vehicle location information, vehicle status, such as energy consumption, vehicle speed, gear position, power mode, ESC status, steering system status, battery status, powertrain status, and overall vehicle performance status.

Other

Infotainment system

- Depending on vehicle configuration, data can be added to the infotainment system by the users themselves, such as media data for playing video on the infotainment system, address data for

use in the navigation system, or data for use in online services.

- Depending on vehicle configuration, individual settings in and on the vehicle can also be entered.
- Data stored in the vehicle can be deleted at any time.
- BYD has no control over data transferred to third parties (from the use of third party content, in particular as part of online services).

Integration of mobile devices

- Depending on vehicle configurations, mobile devices can be connected and controlled through the vehicle's infotainment system.
- It may be necessary that the device's screen or audio is displayed/played through the infotainment system or transmitted to it.
- Additional data like positioning or vehicle information can be transmitted through applications for use in certain navigation systems, communication, or other third-party services.
- The specific type of data processing depends on the respective function and is controlled by the user or third parties such as the provider of the devices or corresponding services.

Internet access and connected services

- Depending on vehicle configurations, the Internet can be accessed for certain functions or BYD services through the vehicle's infotainment system network devices.
- BYD is not liable for any such services provided by any other party.
- In such cases, please obtain information about the use of data from the provider of the respective online service.

Camera image recording/surrounding area monitoring

- Your vehicle is equipped with a number of cameras/sensors.
- The reason for this is that some vehicle functionalities require the vehicle's path to be detected and assessed which is done by cameras that detect objects in the vehicle's surroundings such as obstacles.
- The images are transmitted to the respective control module for further analytics required to operate the systems.
- Some images are just processed on a volatile basis (RAM), others may be stored, depending on vehicle equipment.
- The vehicle may be equipped with an outward-facing camera (OFC) that can be used to take footage of the surrounding (for example, dashcam).
- The vehicle may also be equipped with an inward-facing camera (IFC), which can be used to take footage inside the vehicle.
- Both OFC and IFC footage is stored.
- You are responsible to check the laws of your residence before turning on your OFC or IFC (for instance, in some countries consent is required for the use of IFC, and in others OFC is strictly restricted to dashcam purposes).
- For more camera details, see ***P163***.

Permanent Vehicle Transfer to Third Parties and Offline Mode

- In case of a permanent vehicle transfer, that is, when you sell or give a vehicle to a new owner for permanent use, it must be noted that any personalization/user settings made via the infotainment system (including the

address list and the navigation system) can be accessed by the new owner.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle is being scrapped or transferred, reset the vehicle system to factory settings to protect your personal privacy.

- You can also restrict your vehicle's communication with the BYD data server and the processing of vehicle-related and personal data by setting the vehicle to offline mode.
- On the infotainment touchscreen, tap to turn Wi-Fi off.
- You can also disable Wi-Fi in → **System** → **Link** → **WLAN**.

Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities

- BYD discloses your personal data to third parties only if this is legally permissible or you have consented to it.
- However, subject to applicable laws, government agencies may be authorized to read out data from vehicles (e.g. data can be read from the airbag control unit to clarify an accident).
- If required by law, BYD may also be obliged to disclose data upon request to governmental authorities in your country, e.g. in the investigation of a criminal offence.

Your Data Protection Rights

- BYD has staunch respect for its customer's privacy, and strictly complies with all data protection laws, in particular the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) and applicable local laws.
- According to these laws, owners have specific rights when their personal data is processed:
  - Data subjects have the right of information and access, to rectification, erasure of personal data ("right to be forgotten") and the right to object to the processing of personal data or to restrict it (or to withdraw consent given earlier, as well as the right to data portability).
- These rights may be limited in some cases. For example, if we can show that we have a legal obligation to process your data, or if providing the information to you would disclose personal data about another person, or if we are legally prevented from disclosing that information.
- In some cases, this may mean that we can retain the data even if you withdraw your consent.

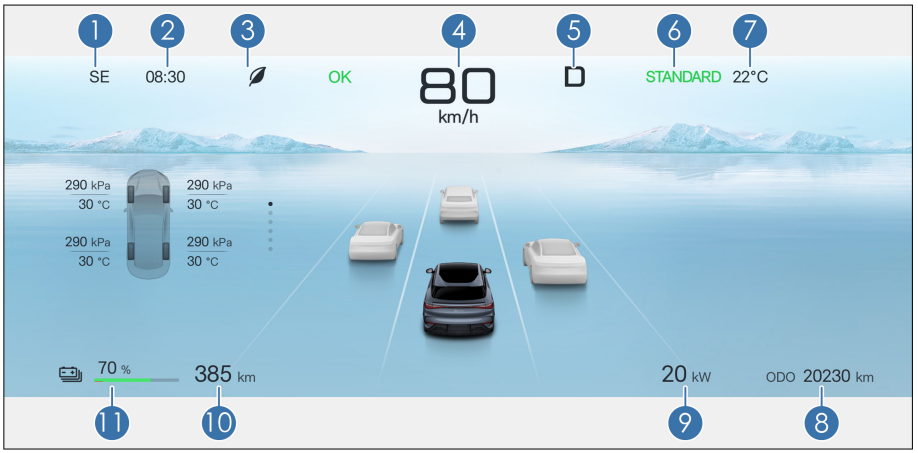
02 INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Instrument Cluster.....34

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster View

LCD Instrument Cluster



1 Direction
2 Time
3 Driving mode
4 Speedometer
5 Gear status
6 Regenerative braking
7 Outside temperature
8 Total mileage
9 Power meter
10 Driving range
11 State of charge (SOC)

Instrument cluster view in simple mode



CAUTION

- When the instrument cluster experiences occasional communication delays, it may automatically switch to simple mode for safe driving. In this mode, essential driving information remains displayed and vehicle operation is not affected. The system returns to normal mode automatically once communication recovers. If it does not, try the following steps to switch back to normal mode:

  1. Press and hold the scroll button on auxiliary dashboard to restart the instrument cluster information display system.
  2. While safety is ensured, restart the vehicle.

CAUTION

- If the instrument cluster remains in simple mode after those actions have been taken, promptly contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.
- The image of the instrument cluster view is for reference only and is subject to actual factory configuration.

Instrument Cluster Indicators

Indicators/Warning Lights

	Left turn signal indicator		Right turn signal indicator
	Light switch indicator*		Low beam indicator
OK	OK indicator		Position light indicator

	AVH indicator		Discharge indicator
	High beam indicator		AFL indicator
	AEB indicator		ICC indicator
	LDA indicator		ACC indicator
	AEB fault warning light		ICC fault warning light
	LDA fault warning light		ACC fault warning light
	Driving power limit warning light		ABS fault warning light
	High-voltage battery low SOC warning light		BSD fault warning light
	AVAS OFF indicator*		Rear fog light indicator
	Tire pressure fault warning light		Smart key warning light
	ESC OFF warning light*		Main alarm indicator
	ESC fault warning light		Headlight fault warning light
	AEB warning light		High-voltage battery charging connection indicator

	Low-voltage power system fault warning light		High-voltage battery fault warning light
	Motor overheating warning light		High-voltage battery overheating warning light
	Powertrain fault warning light		Coolant overheating warning light
	Seat belt reminder indicator		Airbag fault warning light
	EPB indicator		Brake system fault warning light
	TSR indicator		Steering system fault warning light
	Normal mode indicator		Sport mode indicator
	Economic mode indicator		Snow mode indicator

Indicators/Warning Lights Description

 Smart key warning light

- If the key is not in the vehicle when you press the START/STOP button, this warning light comes on for a few seconds, a beep sounds, and the message "No key detected, please confirm if the key is in the vehicle" is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- If you press the START/STOP button while an electronic smart key matching the model is in the vehicle, this warning light does not light up. The vehicle can now be powered on.
- If the warning light flashes after you press the START/STOP button, it indicates low battery of the key.

 ABS fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. If the anti-lock braking system (ABS) is working properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. Thereafter, if the system fails, the light lights up again until the fault is cleared.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the brake system fault warning light off), the braking system continues to operate whereas ABS does not.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the brake system fault warning light off), since ABS does not operate, the wheels will be locked in case of emergency braking or braking on a slippery road.

- If any of the following cases occurs, there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light does not come on or is steady on when the ignition is on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If both warning lights for ABS and the brake system turn on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Due to the malfunction of the ABS system, vehicle stability may be significantly reduced during braking.

- If both the ABS indicator and the braking system indicator come on and the electronic parking brake (EPB) is fully released, the braking force distribution system of front and rear wheels has also failed.



Tire pressure fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. It turns off in a few seconds if the tire pressure monitoring system is working properly. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light comes on or flashes, the message "Please check TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster, and the tire pressure is displayed as "---", it indicates that the tire pressure system is faulty.
- When the tire pressure value displays "No Signal", it indicates that the tire pressure signal at this location may be interfered or the tire pressure monitoring module is damaged.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light flashes rapidly and one or more values turn red on the tire pressure screen on the instrument cluster, the corresponding tire is leaking rapidly.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light is solid on and one or more values turn yellow on the tire pressure screen on the instrument cluster, the corresponding tire is in under-pressure condition. When the temperature value of one or more tires turns yellow, it indicates that the tire temperature is too high.
- In the event of any of the situations above, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.



Electronic stability control (ESC) fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. If electronic stability control (ESC) functions properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again until the system fault is fixed.
- If the ESC warning light flashes temporarily while the vehicle is in motion, it indicates the ESC system is working.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the brake system fault warning light off), the ESC fails, but the ABS and

the brake system continue to operate normally.

- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the brake system fault warning light off), the ESC system does not work. This means the vehicle is extremely unstable at sharp turns or when the driver steers away from obstacles ahead.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light remains off (self-check not performed) after the vehicle is powered on.
  - This warning light is steady on while driving.

REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the ESC warning light remains on while the warning lights for the ABS and the braking system are on, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Due to the malfunction of the ABS and ESC system, vehicle stability may be significantly reduced.

- ESC warning light on (steering angle zero-point not learned):
  - Under certain conditions, such as disconnecting the low-voltage battery or removing fuses, the vehicle may lose power. After power is restored, if the steering angle zero-point has not been learned, the ESC warning light may illuminate (this does not indicate a malfunction).
  - In this case, perform the steering angle zero-point learning procedure as follows: Slowly turn the steering wheel fully to the left and right end positions and hold each position for 2–5 seconds. Release the steering wheel, turn off the vehicle, and wait for at least 10 seconds. Restart the vehicle. The ESC fault warning light should turn off, indicating that the learning procedure is complete.



ESC OFF warning light

- When the ESC OFF switch is pressed, this warning light should remain steady on and the ESC system will not operate. When the ESC OFF switch is pressed again, this warning light should turn off and the ESC system returns to normal.

REMINDER

- While the ESC OFF warning light is on, the driver must stay alert and drive at a lower speed when making a sharp turn and when avoiding an obstacle which appears suddenly, Due to the malfunction of the ESC system, vehicle stability may be significantly reduced.



Driving power limit warning light

- When the power of the vehicle is limited, this indicator will come on. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in time.



Headlight fault warning light

- When the warning light is yellow, it indicates the headlight is faulty, and it is recommended to bring the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.



Blind spot detection (BSD) fault warning light

- When this indicator is on, it is recommended to bring the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.



Main alarm indicator

- If this indicator goes on, check the fault prompt or warning on the instrument cluster.



Seat belt reminder indicator

- With the ignition switched on, if any passenger on the front seats or rear seats has not buckled up, the seat belt reminder indicator lights up. It remains on until the seat belt is fastened.



Airbag fault warning light

- With the ignition switched on, this warning light turns on and then goes off in a few seconds if the airbag system is working properly. This warning light is used to monitor the airbag ECU, collision sensors, inflation device, warning lights, connections, and power supply.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - When the ignition is switched on, this warning light remains off or is solid on after the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.



Brake system fault warning light

- When the brake fluid level is low and the braking system is faulty, this warning light lights up. If any of the following conditions occurs, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
  - This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on and the brake fluid level is low.
  - This warning light is solid on although after starting the vehicle, the brake fluid level and EPB system operation are normal (the EPB is engaged and released normally, and the message "Please check the EPB" is not displayed). Brief flashing is considered normal.
  - Fault warning lights for parking brake and ABS come on simultaneously.

REMINDER

- When the brake fluid level is low, park the vehicle because it is dangerous to continue driving.



Steering system fault warning light

- When the steering system is faulty, this warning light is steady on. It is recommended to bring the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

REMINDER

- The steering system features an electric motor to reduce the force required to turn the steering wheel.
- When turning the steering wheel, a hum may be heard from the running motor. This does not indicate that the motor is faulty.
- Do not turn the steering wheel to its limit position for more than 5 seconds, otherwise the temperature protection will be activated and the steering system will be damaged or steering will become heavy.

- If you have turned the steering wheel frequently with the vehicle staying put for a long time, the steering wheel may become difficult to turn even if the warning light does not turn on. This is not a fault.
  - To prevent steering system overheating, the power assist effect will be reduced if the steering wheel has been frequently turned with the vehicle staying put for a long time. As a result, the steering wheel become difficult to turn. In this case, reduce steering frequency or power off the vehicle. The system will recover within 10 minutes.

WARNING

- If the steering system fault warning light goes on, immediately park the vehicle safely, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.



Low-voltage power system fault warning light

- If this warning light turns on while the vehicle is in motion, it indicates that there is a problem with the DC system or the low-voltage power system. Turn off devices such as the A/C, fan, and radio, and pull over the vehicle immediately if it is safe to do so. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for rescue as soon as possible.



Powertrain fault warning light

- If the powertrain fails, this warning light turns on.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

CAUTION

- Try not to drive the vehicle when the warning light is on. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to check the problem as soon as possible.



High-voltage battery overheating warning light

- If this warning light is on, it indicates that the high-voltage battery temperature is too high and the vehicle must be stopped to cool down. When the warning light flashes, it is recommended to immediately stop the vehicle safely and leave the vehicle as soon as possible.

- The high-voltage battery may overheat under the following operating conditions:
  - Driving up a slope for a long time in hot weather
  - Long period of stop-and-go traffic condition, frequent rapid acceleration, frequent hard braking, or vehicle running for a long time without pause.

 High-voltage battery fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition has just been switched on. If the high-voltage battery system is working properly, this warning light will turn off in a few seconds. If this light lights up again thereafter, it indicates a system failure. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means that there are faults in the components monitored by the warning light system. In such case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is on.
  - This warning light is steady on or occasionally turns on while driving.

 AEB warning light

- When this indicator is on or flashes, pay attention to the distance from the vehicle ahead, and do not get too close to it to prevent potential collision.

 Coolant overheating indicator

- If this indicator is solid on, it indicates that the coolant temperature is too high. Park the vehicle in a safe area until this indicator goes out.

 TSR indicator

- When this indicator lights up, it means that the vehicle system has recognized the speed limit value on current road section.

Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts

The instrument cluster may display the following fault prompts. Handle them as recommended.

Symbol	Fault Prompt	Response
	Please check the OBC system	The on-board charging system is faulty. Check the charging connection, and reconnect the charging equipment. If the fault persists, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	For your safety, remote drive is suspended	Stop using remote driving when it is abnormal.
	Please check the vehicle network	The vehicle may be disconnected from the data network. Park the vehicle immediately,

Symbol	Fault Prompt	Response
		and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the memory system	The memory system is faulty. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	EV function limited	The EV function is limited. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.
	Please check the headlamp system	The headlight is faulty. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	ADAS function limited	The forward collision warning (FCW) or automatic emergency braking (AEB) function is limited. Park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	ADAS function limited	The blind spot detection (BSD) function is limited. Park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	ADAS function limited	The lane departure warning (LDW) or the lane departure prevention (LDP) function is limited. Park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the gear system	The shifter controller is faulty. Park the vehicle immediately, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

03 CONTROLLER OPERATION

Doors and Keys..... 46
Seats..... 60
Steering Wheel..... 65
Wipers..... 68
Mirrors..... 70
Switches..... 72

Doors and Keys

Keys

The vehicle is equipped with keys, including the electronic smart key, mechanical key (installed in the electronic smart key), NFC key card*, NFC digital key*, and Bluetooth digital key*, to enable functions such as unlocking/locking doors and starting the vehicles.

Electronic Smart Key

Press the left or right front door microswitch, while carrying the smart key, to unlock or lock all doors, or press smart key buttons to lock/unlock doors, open the trunk, or start the vehicle remotely.

① Indicator

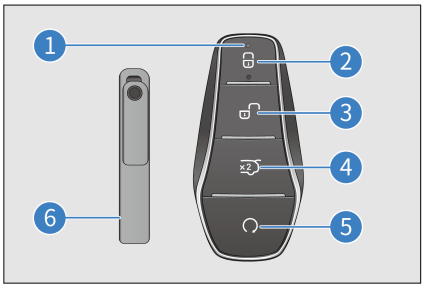
② Lock button

③ Unlock button

④ Trunk release button

⑤ Start/Stop button

⑥ Mechanical key



WARNING

- The button (coin) battery in the smart key is hazardous and both new and used batteries are to be kept away from children at all times.
- If swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, a lithium button battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less.
- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the button battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

CAUTION

- The smart key is an electronic component. Observe the following instructions to prevent damage to the key:
  - Do not place the smart key in a position exposed to high temperature, such as on the dashboard.
  - Do not disassemble the smart key.
  - Do not let the smart key hit other objects or fall down.
  - Do not immerse the key in water or clean it in the ultrasonic scrubber.
  - Do not place smart keys with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as the mobile phone.
  - Do not attach to the smart key any objects (such as a metal seal) capable of cutting off electromagnetic wave signals.
  - You can register a spare key for the same vehicle. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

CAUTION

- If the electronic smart key cannot operate the door within the normal distance, or the key indicator light is dim or off:
  - Check for nearby radio stations or airport radio transmitters that interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
  - The battery of an electronic smart key may be exhausted. Check the battery inside the electronic smart key. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for battery change.
- If you lose your smart key, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible to reduce the risk of vehicle theft or accidents.
- Do not change the transmission frequency arbitrarily, increase the transmission power (including additional transmission frequency amplifier), or arbitrarily connect the external detection antenna or switch other transmitting detection antennas.
- The use of the smart key must not cause harmful interference to legal radio communication services. Once interference is found, stop using the key immediately and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use.
- The use of micropower radio equipment must be free from interference of all radio services or from radiation of industrial, scientific, and medical equipment.

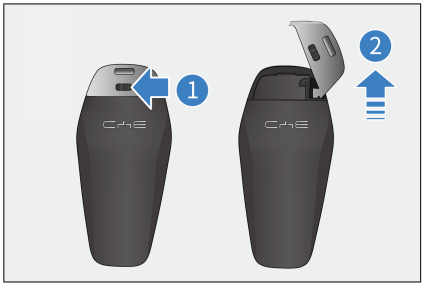
CAUTION

- Do not use it near aircraft or airports.
- People implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators should stay away from the detection antennas of intelligent entry and start systems, as electromagnetic waves can affect the normal use of such devices. In addition to people implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators, those who use other electronic medical devices should also consult the manufacturer on the use of such devices under the influence of electromagnetic waves. Electromagnetic waves may bring unknown consequences to the use of such medical devices.
- When leaving the vehicle, always carry your key and lock the vehicle. Never leave anyone (especially children) alone in the vehicle.

Mechanical Key

Use the mechanical key (inside the smart key) to lock or unlock the driver's door. When the key is not used, be sure to insert the mechanical key back into the smart key.

- When using the mechanical key in the electronic smart key, slide the lock-up button in the direction of arrow ① and push the back cover of the electronic smart key in the direction of arrow ② to take out the mechanical key, as shown in the illustration.
- After using the mechanical key, insert it in the opposite direction as the arrow ② shows and close the back cover of the smart key.



Bluetooth Digital Key*

- You can use the BYD Bluetooth digital key to control the vehicle through a close-range mobile phone Bluetooth connection, including locking or unlocking the doors.
- You can download and install the latest BYD App in the app market. The function of Bluetooth digital key can be found in the app.
- For vehicles supporting Bluetooth digital key, you can use the key after activating it in the BYD App.
- Turn on the Bluetooth on your phone, approach the vehicle, and open the BYD App for automatic Bluetooth digital key connection. You can also connect it manually. The key is effective after Bluetooth is connected.
- The specific functions supported by the key are subject to the vehicle configuration. The key can be used without network. After the key connection, you can select operations, and the app will immediately send commands to control the vehicle.
- In some countries or regions, according to relevant regulations, when a user starts the vehicle, the vehicle will detect the position of the Bluetooth digital key. The vehicle can be started only when it detects that the key is within two meters of it to ensure the vehicle property safety.

CAUTION

- Before activating the Bluetooth digital key, ensure that the vehicle network is well connected. If the activation fails, try to move the vehicle to a place with good network and activate the key again in the application.
- After the vehicle is unlocked with a Bluetooth digital key, the doors will lock automatically if there is no operation in a short time.
- When the Bluetooth key connection or operation fails for many times, you can turn the Bluetooth off and then on, or restart the application.
- Limited by the vehicle environment and mobile phone performance, the effective distance of the key will be reduced in case of dense vehicles.
- There are a few mobile phones that are not compatible with Bluetooth digital keys.

NFC Key Card*

- The NFC card is a key configured for the vehicle based on the near field communication method to unlock, lock, and start the vehicle.
- Place the NFC key at the mark on the left side mirror to unlock/lock all the doors.
- Place the NFC key on the NFC area at the front of the cubby box to authorize the motor start.

CAUTION

- NFC key card is an electronic product. The following

CAUTION

instructions must be observed to prevent function failure of or damage to the card:

- Do not place the NFC card in the charging area when the wireless charger is on (see ***P194*** for details).
- Do not attach any object (such as a metal seal or metal phone case) that may cut off electromagnetic waves.
- Do not place the NFC card in a position exposed to high temperature, such as on the dashboard.
- Do not bend the card with force.
- Do not place the card with other hard objects.

- NFC key cards use near-field communication technology, requiring a detection distance of less than 2 cm. Hold your NFC card close to the side mirror for 1–2 seconds.
- It is recommended to carry the NFC card at all times to avoid situations where you may be unable to use the vehicle due to loss or malfunction of your phone or smart key.
- In order to ensure vehicle safety, handle the NFC key card with care. If it is lost, immediately contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for blocking of the lost card and configuration of the new card.

NFC Digital Key*

- The NFC digital key is a digital key solution provided by BYD. You can register smartphones or wearable devices as vehicle keys to unlock, lock, and start the vehicle.
- Before activating the NFC digital key, ensure that:
  - You have registered BYD Cloud Service for the vehicle.
  - Your vehicle supports NFC digital key.
  - Your smartphone or wearable device supports BYD NFC digital key (contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for device compatibility).

Activating the NFC digital key on smartphones

Before activating, start the vehicle and shift into Park with a valid smart key. You can activate the NFC digital key in any of the three ways:

- Via the BYD app:
  - Download and log into the BYD app. Navigate to **Digital Key** and follow the instructions to activate the key.
- Via the email link:
  - Log into the email account reserved during vehicle purchase on the phone, and then activate the key following the instructions in the activation email from bydapp@byd.auto.
- Via the infotainment touchscreen:
  - On the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **Vehicle** → **Locks** → **Digital key** and follow the instructions to activate the key.

Activating the NFC digital key on wearable devices

Supported wearable devices include Apple Watch (consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for other supported devices), and there are two ways of activation:

- Synchronize the key from iPhone to Apple Watch:
  - After successful key activation on iPhone, the device prompts to add the NFC digital key to a paired Apple Watch which is nearby and unlocked. Follow the prompts to complete activation.
- Via the Watch app:
  - If the iPhone NFC key is active but not synced to Apple Watch, open the Watch app on iPhone, select **Wallet**, find the key, and tap **Add** to activate the key following the instructions.

Using the NFC digital key

Ensure the NFC function is enabled on your device before using the NFC digital key. Here is how to use:

- To unlock/lock the vehicle, position the NFC antenna area of the smartphone or wearable device near the NFC sign on the driver side mirror. Consult the manufacturer for the NFC antenna area of your device.
- To authorize vehicle start, place the smartphone or wearable device at the NFC sign inside the vehicle.

CAUTION

- After authorizing vehicle start with the NFC digital key, start the vehicle promptly, or you need to place the device at the NFC sign again to reauthorize.

Removing the NFC digital key

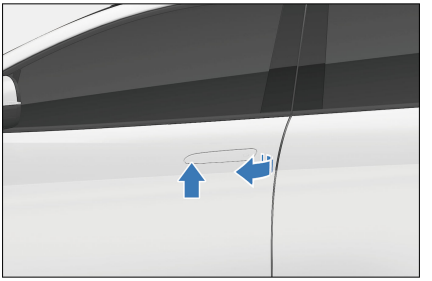
You can remove the NFC digital key in any of the three ways:

- Via the BYD app:
  - Open the BYD app and navigate to the digital key management screen, select the key to remove, and enter the password to remove it.
- Via the infotainment touchscreen:
  - With a valid smart key inside the vehicle, go to infotainment touchscreen → → **Vehicle** → **Locks** → **Digital key** and follow the instructions to remove the key.
- Via the Wallet app:
  - Open the Wallet app on the phone, select the digital key, and remove it following the instructions.

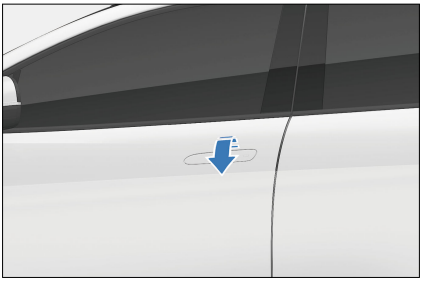
Locking/Unlocking Doors

Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key

1. Push the left side of a hidden door handle, and turn the right side to get a finger height, holding it by a hand.



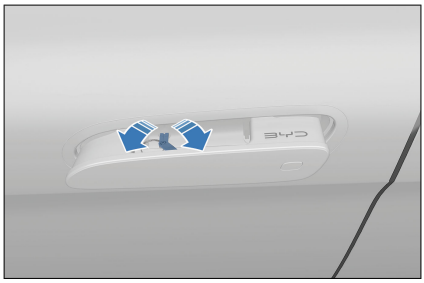
2. Once the right side is extended, pull the middle of the handle outward to extend the handle.



3. Pull the driver's door handle to its maximum angle. Insert, turn, and then

pull out the mechanical key. Pull on the door handle to open the door.

- To unlock the driver's door: turn the key clockwise.
- To lock the driver's door: turn the key counterclockwise.

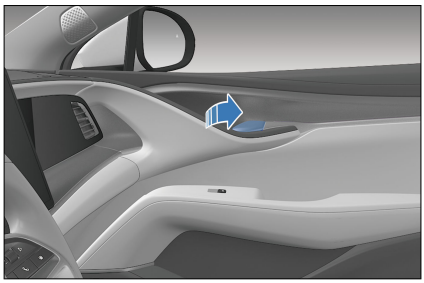


CAUTION

- After removing the mechanical key, pull the driver's door handle to open the door.

Opening with Interior Door Handle

- When the vehicle is unlocked, pull the handle once to open the door from inside the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked, pull the handle twice to open the door from inside the vehicle.



WARNING

- Do not allow children to play with the door handle, so as to avoid the door opening while driving.
- If there are children in the vehicle, make sure to enable the child protection lock function.

CAUTION

- The interior door handle is mechanically linked to the door latch and remains operational even when the vehicle is powered off.
- As this vehicle is equipped with child protection locks, the rear doors can only be opened with the interior handle when the child protection locks are disabled.

Locking/Unlocking with Smart Key

- The wireless remote control is used to unlock or lock all doors at a close distance, and complete additional functions.
- To enable or disable this function, go to infotainment touchscreen → → → **Vehicle** → **Locks**.
- In the active area, press the associated button on the registered smart key to lock or unlock all doors.

Locking

- When all the doors, the hood, and the trunk lid are closed, press the lock button to lock all the doors. If the vehicle is shut down, the side mirrors fold in (when side mirror auto fold is enabled on the infotainment system) with turn signals flashing once. If the ignition has not been switched off, the turn signals do not flash, and the alarm

sounds once. Check whether all doors are securely locked.



- If any door is not closed, the side mirrors do not fold, the turn signals do not flash, the door handles do not fold and the alarm sounds once.
- If the hood or trunk is not closed, the side mirrors do not fold, the turn signals do not flash, and the alarm sounds once.

Unlocking

- Press the unlock button. All doors are unlocked, the hidden door handles automatically extend, and the turn signal flashes twice.
- When you unlock all the doors with the smart key, even if no door is opened, the interior lights stay on for 15 seconds and then go out (providing that the Auto Interior Lights function is enabled on the drop-down shortcut menu of the infotainment touchscreen).
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open any door within 30 seconds after unlocking with the smart key, or all doors will relock automatically and the four door handles retract.
- If the vehicle is equipped with four-door anti-pinch function, Even if you press and hold the lock or unlock button, locking or unlocking will not be repeated. You need to release the button and press it again. Press and hold the lock button to raise all four windows.

Lockout prevention function

- If the key is left in the vehicle when the doors are closed and locked, the vehicle will unlock automatically and the turn signals will flash twice to alarm the driver to take out the key.

REMINDER

- If the ignition is in a status other than OFF, doors cannot be unlocked/locked with the unlock/lock button.

Finding the Vehicle with Smart Key

- With the anti-theft alarm system armed, pressing the lock button sounds a beep and makes turn signals flash 15 times. Use this function to locate the vehicle when it cannot be found.
- When the vehicle is in vehicle search mode, press the lock button again. The vehicle enters another vehicle search mode.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Smart Key

- When the ignition is switched off:
  - Press and hold the lock button on the smart key to raise the four windows.
  - Press and hold the unlock button on the smart key to lower the four windows.
- To enable or disable key window locking and closing/unlocking and opening functions, go to infotainment touchscreen → → **Vehicle** → **Locks**.

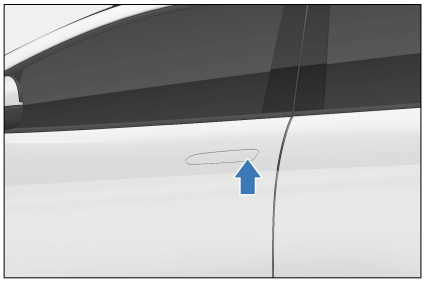
CAUTION

- When using the remote control function to raise windows, pay attention to the safety of occupants in the vehicle, and use this function only after making sure the windows are clear from pinching anyone.

Locking/Unlocking with Microswitch

Locking

- With the doors closed but not locked, press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key, and then all doors lock and all door handles fold automatically. If the vehicle is shut down, the side mirrors will fold in with turn signals flashing once. If the ignition has not been switched off, the side mirrors will not fold, the turn signals will not flash, and the alarm will sound once.



- If any door, hood, or trunk lid is not closed, pressing the microswitch still locks the closed doors, but the alarm only sounds once, and the side mirror do not flash.

Unlocking

- When the vehicle is locked, press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key. All doors unlock at the same time. The hidden door handle extends automatically and the turn signal flashes twice.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking, or all doors will relock automatically and the four door handles retract*.
- Pressing the microswitch does not work if:
  - This is performed while a door is being opened or closed.
  - The key is left in the vehicle.

REMINDER

- If the electronic smart key is too close to an exterior door handle or window, it may not be possible to activate the entry function.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Microswitch

- With the ignition off, press and hold the microswitch while carrying the smart key to roll up or down all windows (By default, lifting the window function is activated and lowering the window function is disabled).
- To enable or disable microswitch window locking and closing/unlocking and opening functions, go to infotainment touchscreen → → → **Vehicle** → **Locks**.

Locking/Unlocking with NFC Key

Locking

- When doors are closed but unlocked, place the NFC key at the designated area on the driver side mirror. All doors are locked at the same time with turn signals flashing once..



Unlocking

- With the anti-theft alarm system armed, place the NFC key close at the designated area on the driver side mirror to simultaneously unlock all the doors. The turn signals flash twice.
- The locking/unlocking function is invalid if the NFC key is placed at the designated area on the driver side mirror while doors are being opened or closed.
- To use the NFC digital key on the phone, enable the NFC function of the phone and hold the top back part of the phone close to the designated area on the driver side mirror.

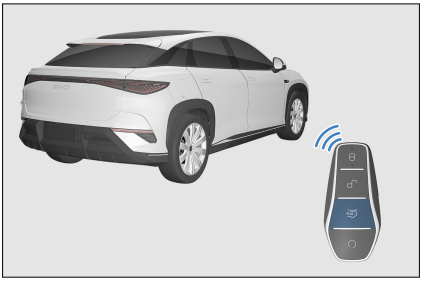
REMINDER

- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after unlocking with the NFC key, or all doors will relock automatically.
- Some smartphone models do not support the use of NFC digital keys when the device is powered off.
- Avoid using the NFC digital key of your phone for extended periods or frequently when it is out of battery or turned off.

Locking/Unlocking the Trunk

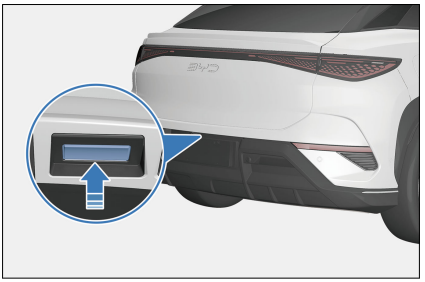
Unlocking the trunk with smart key

- Double-press the trunk release button on the smart key. The trunk opens and with turn signals flashing twice.



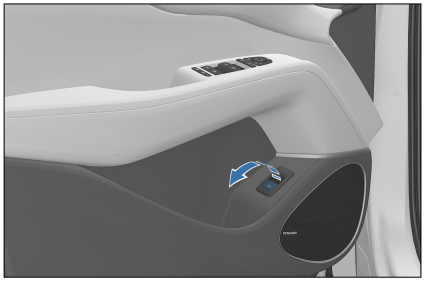
Unlocking the trunk with electronic switch

- With the vehicle locked, press the rear electronic switch while carrying a valid key to unlock the trunk.
- With the vehicle unlocked, press the rear electronic switch to open the trunk.



Opening/Closing the trunk from inside the vehicle

- With the vehicle unlocked, pull up the electrical trunk lid button to open the lid; pull up and hold the button to close the lid.
- If the vehicle speed is greater than 3 km/h, the trunk lid cannot be opened by pulling up the button.



① Trunk close button

- When the trunk lid is open and stationary, press this button to close the lid.



- Press this button a second time to stop the lid at the current position. Press this button again to have the lid move in the opposite direction.

② Vehicle lock button

- When the ignition is off and the trunk is open, pressing the lock switch while carrying a valid smart key closes the trunk, locks the entire vehicle, and arms the anti-theft alarm system.

REMINDER

- Before closing the trunk, make sure doors, windows and sunroof are properly closed.

Setting trunk opening height

- Open the trunk manually or automatically to the desired position, keep it at this position, and then press and hold the interior trunk button for over three seconds. The speaker sounds for one second, indicating that the opening height is set to the current position.
- Set the trunk opening height by going to the infotainment touchscreen → → **Vehicle**→ **Locks**.

Anti-pinch function

- The trunk will open or stop moving if it contacts any obstacle while closing or opening.

When the trunk fails to act automatically

- Manually and completely close the trunk for recovery.

When reconnecting the low-voltage battery

- Close the trunk manually to ensure the power trunk lid functions normally.

WARNING

- In order to prevent serious injury, make sure to observe the following precautions:
  - Never try to deliberately activate the anti-pinch function.
  - Make sure to alert people nearby of the lid motion.
  - Make sure hands and fingers are clear from the lid area when it is closing.
  - Make sure the surrounding area is safe when opening or closing the trunk.
  - Make sure the trunk is properly closed when the vehicle is in motion.
  - Make sure to remove any ice or snow from the area before

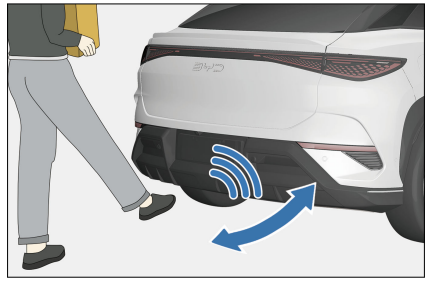
WARNING

opening the trunk, otherwise the lid may close again.

- Do not manually interfere in lid motion when it is opening or closing.
- Be mindful of windy conditions when opening or closing the trunk.
- The anti-pinch function may fail to work if an object is caught right before the trunk is fully closed.
- The lid may start closing before fully opening. Opening or closing the trunk on slopes is more difficult than on level ground. Be mindful of the possibility of the lid to move on its own in such conditions. Before loading or unloading the trunk, make sure the lid is fully open and secure.
- The anti-pinch function may fail depending on the object shape. Be especially careful about hand and fingers.

Opening the trunk by automatic kick sensing*

When you stand in the effective detection area of the trunk lid sensor with the valid smart key carried, raise your foot comfortably and smoothly and make a kicking move under the rear bumper without touching it.



- This opens the trunk if it is closed.
- This closes the trunk if it is fully opened.
- This freezes the trunk lid while it is moving. Kick again to move the trunk lid in the opposite direction.

WARNING

- Make sure to stand steadily on the ground and keep enough distance with the rear of the vehicle when doing the kicking motion. Or, you may lose balance (for example, on the ice).
- Do not carry the smart key in case the trunk lid pops up accidentally in the following situations:
  - You are to place or pick up an object at the rear of the vehicle.
  - You are to maintain (such as polish) the rear of the vehicle.

REMINDER

- Complete kicking within one second.
- Ensure the smart key is within one meter from the trunk when using the hands-free trunk opening function.
- When rainwater or vehicle wash water flows in a stream through

REMINDER

the rear bumper, or snow covers the rear bumper, there will be a delay in opening the trunk lid by kicking. After this situation disappears for some time, the hands-free access control system will return to normal.

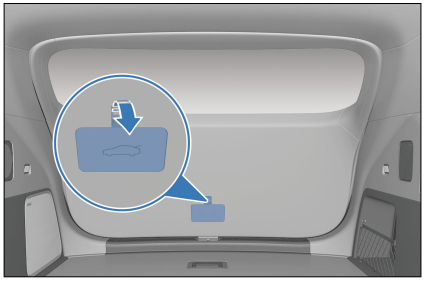
- When the trunk lid lock is being actuated, there is no response to another kicking motion.

Emergency Trunk Releasing from the Inside

1. Pull up the folding release clasp on the seat back to fold the rear seat back, and then enter the truck.



2. There is an emergency unlocking device on the inside of the trunk lid. Open the cover of the device and pull out the unlocking rope to open the trunk in an emergency.



REMINDER

- When the vehicle is powered off, the trunk lid can be unlocked from the inside in case of emergency.

Locking/Unlocking with Central Locking

Locking or unlocking with central locking

- See ***P75*** for details.

Locking/Unlocking all doors automatically

- All doors automatically lock at vehicle speeds above 8 km/h.
- Press the START/STOP button to switch the ignition off and then all doors are unlocked automatically.

Locking/Unlocking all doors concurrently

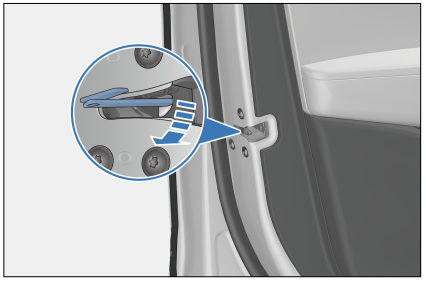
- When the vehicle is not in anti-theft mode, the backlight of the central locking button turns on if the vehicle is locked and turns off if the vehicle is unlocked.
- Pressing the central lock button locks all doors so that any attempt to open any door from the outside fails. At this time, pull the interior handle to unlock a door and pull a second time to open it.

REMINDER

- All doors unlock automatically when the vehicle suffers a strong impact, depending on the impact intensity and accident type.

Emergency Locking with Mechanical Key

- When the central locking fails, lock the driver's door with the mechanical key. Use the key to turn the emergency locking knobs of the other three doors counterclockwise to the locked state, and then close the doors. At this time, all vehicle doors are locked and cannot be opened with exterior door handles.
- To unlock the doors, unlock the driver's door with the mechanical key first, then enter the vehicle, and pull other interior door handles twice to open the doors.



REMINDER

- Prevent excessive force from distorting or breaking the key during the operation.

Smart Access and Start System

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors and start the vehicle.

Access

Use the smart key to lock or unlock the vehicle doors (see ***P51*** and ***P53***).

REMINDER

- If the electronic smart key is too close to an exterior door handle or window, it may not be possible to activate the entry function.

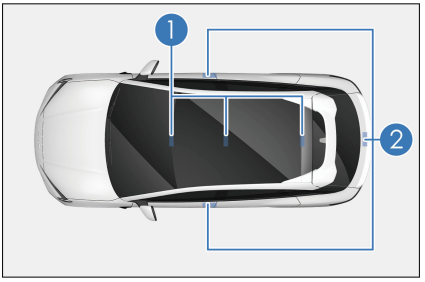
Start-up

With the smart key inside, press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button to start the vehicle (See ***P109***).

Antenna Positions

① Interior detection antenna

② Exterior detection antenna



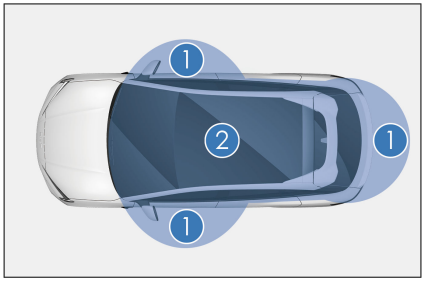
Active Area

The smart access and start functions take effect only when the registered smart key is within the active area.

① Active area of the access function: about one meter from the front door handle and the exterior trunk switch.

② Active area of the start function: inside the cabin.

If another smart key is near this vehicle's smart key, unlocking may take longer than usual, which is normal.



REMINDER

In the following situation, smart access and start system may not work normally:

- There is a strong electromagnetic field nearby, such as TV towers, power stations, and broadcasting stations.
- The smart key is being carried along with a communication device, such as a two-way radio or mobile phone.
- The smart key is in contact with or covered by a metal object.
- The door handle is operated too quickly.
- The smart key is too close to the handle.
- Another wireless remote control function is being used nearby.
- When the smart key battery runs out.
- The smart key is close to high-voltage equipment or equipment that produces noise.
- The smart key is being carried along with another smart key or radio-wave-emitting device.
- Even within the active area, the smart key may not work properly

REMINDER

in certain locations, for example, on the dashboard, in the glove box, on the floor, in the cup holder, or in the trunk.

- If the smart access system is not working properly and it is impossible to enter the vehicle, the mechanical key can be used to lock/unlock the driver's door, or the wireless remote control function can be used to lock/unlock all doors.
- Pressing the START/STOP button may not enable the start function due to:
  - If the electronic smart key does not work, the smart key system warning indicator on the combination instrument flashes, and the message "Low key battery" is displayed on the information display screen in the middle of the combination instrument, indicating that the key battery may have run out.
- If the smart access and start system cannot work properly due to system failures, bring all smart keys to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.

Saving battery power

- The smart key communicates with the vehicle even when the vehicle is not running. Therefore, do not leave the smart key in the vehicle or within two meters from the vehicle.
- Receiving strong electromagnetic waves for a long time drains the battery of the smart key quickly. The smart key must be kept at least one meter away from electrical equipment that generates a magnetic field, such as the following devices:
  - Television

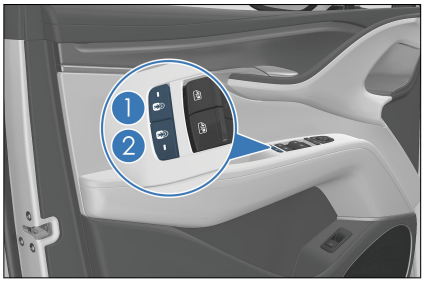
- Personal computer
- Phone charger
- Electroliers
- Fluorescent desk lamp

Child Protection Lock

Child protection locks on the driver's door switches are designed to prevent children sitting in the rear seats from inadvertently opening the rear doors.

① Child protection lock for the rear left door

② Child protection lock for the rear right door



After the child protection lock is activated, doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle, and the window switch for the corresponding rear door cannot be used to raise or lower the window. To unlock the door, press the child protection lock button for the corresponding side again or use the exterior door handle.

WARNING

- Before driving, especially when a child is in the vehicle, ensure that the doors are closed and the child protection lock function is enabled.
- Proper use of seat belts and activation of child protection lock

WARNING

helps prevent the driver and passengers from being thrown out of the vehicle in an accident, and also prevents a door from being opened accidentally.

Seats

Seat Precautions

- Adjust the driver's seat so that the pedals, steering wheel, and dashboard controls are within the driver's easy control.
- While driving, the most effective safeguard is to keep the seatback upright, always rest well on the seatback, and adjust the seat belt to the right position.
- Do not fold or unfold the rear seats when the vehicle is in motion.
- Secure your luggage appropriately to prevent it from skidding or moving. Luggage in the vehicle should not be higher than seatbacks.
- The head support can only protect your head when it is in the proper position. Remember to adjust it to the proper position if it has been moved.

WARNING

- Sitting on a folded seatback, in the trunk, or on the cargo is prohibited. Improper seating position or improperly fastened seat belts can result in personal injuries in case of emergency braking or a collision.
- Do not place any items under the seats. The driver may lose

WARNING

control of the vehicle because items placed there affect the seat locking mechanism, causing the seat to move suddenly.

- When adjusting a seat, ensure sufficient space around the seat and in the rear seating area for children, passengers, or pets there. Be careful not to squeeze or hit children, occupants, or pets in the rear seat area.
- When adjusting a seat, ensure sufficient space between your feet and those of surrounding passengers to avoid injury.
- When adjusting the seat, do not place your hand under the seat or near its operating parts to prevent being crushed.
- After adjusting the seatback, lean back to confirm the seatback is locked. Seatbacks that are not fully locked can cause personal injuries in an accident or emergency braking.
- Do not put the seatback down while driving or riding in the vehicle. This makes the shoulder strap of the seat belt not properly attached to the body. As a result, occupants in the vehicle could hit the strap in an accident, causing injuries to the neck or other parts; or they may slip out of the waist belt, resulting in other serious injuries.
- Do not adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is in motion, as unpredictable seat movement can cause the loss of vehicle control.
- Do not drive the vehicle until occupants are seated properly.

WARNING

- Do not allow children to adjust the seat without adult supervision to avoid any injury.

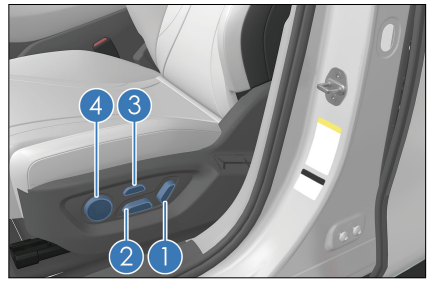
CAUTION

- Adjust the seat position before fastening the seat belt.
- While adjusting a seat, do not let it hit against any passenger or the luggage.

Adjusting Front Seats

Adjusting Front Seat with Power

Power front seat adjustment include adjustment of seatback angle, seat position, cushion height, cushion angle*, leg support* and lumbar support*. Choose the following methods according to the actual configuration of your vehicle.



① Seatback angle adjustment

- Toggle the seatback angle adjustment switch front and back to adjust the seat back angle.

② Seat position adjustment

- Move the seat position adjustment switch back or forth to slide the seat backward or forward.

- Move the front end of the switch up or down to change the cushion angle*.
- Move the rear end of the switch up or down to adjust cushion height.

③ Leg support adjustment*

- Press the front or rear end of the switch to adjust the leg support.

④ Lumbar support adjustment switch*

- The seatback profile can be adjusted to fit the curvature of the occupant's lumbar spine.
  - Press the front or rear portion of the switch to increase or decrease the curvature.
  - Press the upper or lower portion of the switch to extend the curvature up or down.

REMINDER

- Releasing the switch stops the seat in the set position. Do not place anything under the seat as this may prevent the seat from operating.
- Do not move the front seats too far forward to avoid contact with the roof or sun visor.

Memory System*

Memory switch position

- You can set two seat positions to be memorized on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **Seats** → **Seat adjustment**.

Memory setting function

- Memory setting conditions
  - The ignition has been switched on and the vehicle speed is zero.
  - The driver's seat and side mirrors have been adjusted to the desired positions.
  - No operation is made on the driver's seat and side mirrors.
- Memory setting method
  - Press and hold any position button on the seat memory setting interface. Then the positions of the seats and side mirrors will be recorded, and the memory setting finishes.

REMINDER

- If the position button on the memory switch has already been set, the position set will be overwritten.

Memory recall function

Memory recall function with the ignition on

- When the vehicle is in Park, the driver's seat memory system and side mirrors* will perform memory recall when the memory system switch is tapped if the following conditions are met:
  - The anti-theft alarm system has disarmed.
  - The vehicle speed is zero.
  - Memory switch signals are valid.
  - No operation is made on the driver's seat and side mirrors.
- You can interrupt the current memory recall operation by the following methods:
  - Press or toggle any of the driver's seat adjustment switches.
  - Tap any position button on the seat memory setting interface of the infotainment system.

WARNING

- Ensure there are no obstacles around the seat before activating the seat memory recall function.
- Ensure that no part of your body is within the seat's movement range during the seat memory recall process.
- Do not allow children to operate the memory switches to prevent any injury during seat movement.

Automatic driver seat*

- Automatic back
  - This feature enables the seat (if located in the front section of its full travel) to automatically move back for a certain distance after the driver unlocks the vehicle with the smart key and opens the driver's door. This makes it easy for the driver to enter.
  - For easy exiting, this feature also works when the vehicle power is switched from "START" to "STOP" and the driver's door is opened.
- Automatic forward
  - When the vehicle power is switched from "STOP" to "START" and the driver's door is closed, the seat will automatically move forward to the position before the last power-off if no horizontal position adjustment is performed after the auto-back feature is triggered upon the last power-off.
  - If no horizontal position adjustment is performed after the auto-back feature is triggered for easy exiting, the seat will automatically move forward after the driver's door is closed.
- User settings
  - To enable or disable the automatic driver seat, go to infotainment touchscreen → → **Vehicle** → **Comfortable Use**.
  - The automatic driver seat function can be interrupted by closing the driver's door while the seat is moving backward or by opening the driver's door while the seat is moving forward.

REMINDER

- If there is a passenger in the rear seat behind the driver or the rear seat belt is fastened, the automatic driver seat function will be disabled to prevent the risk of pinching.

Ventilation and Heating System*

- To enable or disable ventilation or heating, go to infotainment touchscreen → → **Ventilation/ Heating**.
- You can also access the settings in the drop-down menu on infotainment system homepage.

Ventilation adjustment *

- Seat ventilation: On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the seat ventilation icon to control the fan speed.
  - Tap to select the operation mode among level 1, level 2, and OFF.
  - Switch to OFF to disable seat ventilation.

Heating adjustment*

- Seat heating: On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the seat heating icon to control the heating level.
  - Tap to select the operation mode among level 1, level 2, and OFF.

- Switch to OFF to disable seat heating.

Ventilation and heating functions cannot be turned on at the same time.

- Tap the ventilation icon to make the fan work; if the heating function is then enabled, the fan will stop working and the heater will start to work.
- Tap the heating icon to make the heater work; if the ventilation function is then enabled, the heater will stop working and the fan will start to work.

Folding Rear Seats

Pull the handle on the seatback to fold the bench.



CAUTION

- Fold or unfold the rear seats at a moderate speed. Avoid quickly lowering or pulling up seatbacks to prevent damage to or malfunction of rear seats and the seat belts.
- Ensure that the seat belts are not stuck between the seats when folding, or the seats and belts may be damged.

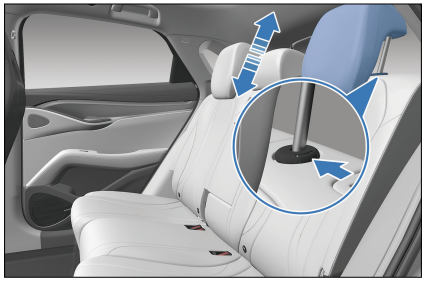
Adjusting Rear Seat Head Supports

Lifting a head support

Lift the head support in the direction of its post until it is in the appropriate position, and then release it until a locking sound is heard.

Lowering a head support

Press and hold the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, slightly lift the head support and release the button after hearing a locking sound.



Removing a head support

Press and hold the head support adjustment button, remove the head support and release the button.

Installing a head support

Insert the head support post into the bushing with the grooves facing forward. Press and hold the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, slightly lift the head support and release the button after hearing a locking sound.

REMINDER

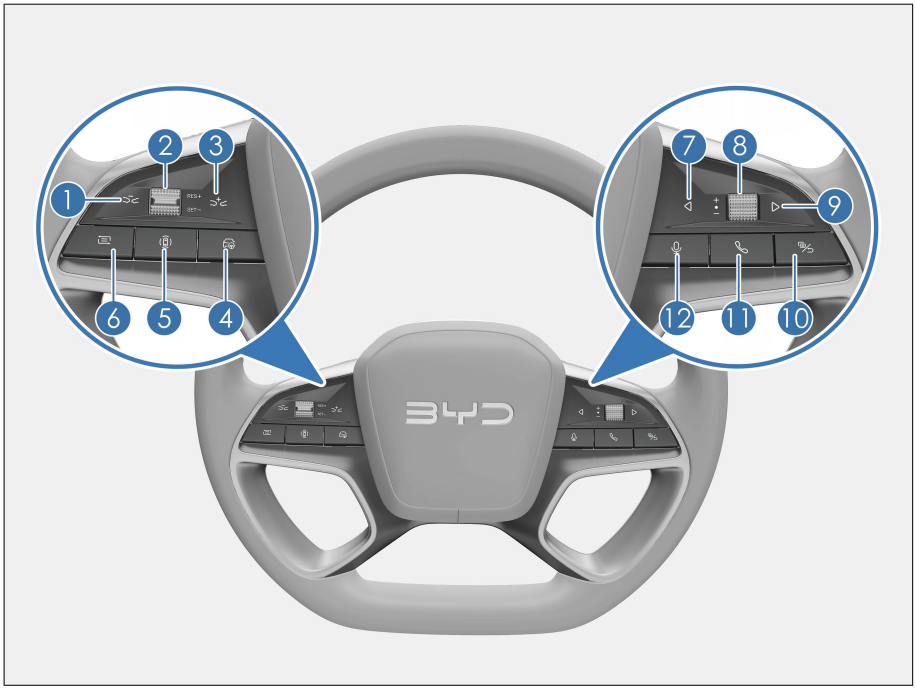
- To avoid any injury to heads and shoulders of the occupants, align the occupant's ear tip line with the center of the head support when adjusting the head support height.
- After the adjustment, press down the head support to make sure that it is locked.

REMINDER

- Do not drive the vehicle without head supports.
- Do not attach any objects to the head support levers.

Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel Switches



1	Distance -	7	Left
2	Rocker switch	8	Scroll button
3	Distance +	9	Right
4	Intelligent cruise control	10	Instrument cluster/Back
5	AVM	11	Call
6	Driving information	12	Speech recognition

Left-hand buttons

Rocker switch

- Reset/+: Activates the adaptive cruise control (ACC) system and uses the previous system settings.

- Settings/-: Sets the current speed to the target cruise speed.

Distance -

- Reduces the distance from the vehicle ahead by one level when the ACC function is enabled. A total of four levels are available.

Distance +

- Increases the distance by one level when the ACC function is enabled. A total of four levels are available.

REMINDER

- For instructions on using cruise control, see ***P65***.

Intelligent cruise control

- Press this button to enable or disable ICC system.

AVM

- Enables or disables automatic vehicle monitoring (AVM).

Driving information

- Press this button to switch the driving information interface. Press and hold to clear the relevant driving information.

Right-hand buttons

Scroll button

- Adjusting infotainment system volume when the instrument cluster is not in menu mode:
  - Roll the button upward to increase the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the highest.
  - Roll the button downward to decrease the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the lowest.
  - Press down the button to mute.
- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode:
  - Roll the button upward to select the upper level-2 or level-3 menu items.
  - Roll the button downward to select the lower level-2 or level-3 menu items.
  - Press down the button to go to the next-level menu or confirm the current setting.

CAUTION

- The infotainment system is muted once the instrument cluster is set to the menu mode. To adjust infotainment system volume, exit the instrument cluster menu mode first.

Left/Right button

- When the infotainment system is in radio mode:
  - Press the ◁ button to select previous radio station.
  - Press the ▷ button to select next radio station.
- When the infotainment system is in USB/Bluetooth music/third-party music app/other modes:
  - Press the ◁ button to play the previous track (track number -1).
  - Press the ◁ button to select a record upward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.
  - Press the ▷ button to play the next track (track number +1).
  - Press the ▷ button to select a record downward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.

- In the menu mode:
  - Press the ◁ button to switch to level-1 menu and its submenus on the left.
  - Press the ▷ button to switch to level-1 menu and its submenus on the right.

Instrument cluster/Back

- When the instrument cluster is not in the menu mode, press this button to view the instrument cluster menu.
- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode, press this button to return to the upper-level screen, or to exit the menu if there is no upper-level screen.
- When on the Bluetooth call screen, press this button to end the call.

Call

- Press this button to make or receive a call (the audio system is muted at the same time).
- When a Bluetooth-unrelated screen is currently displayed, press this button to switch to the phone selection screen if Bluetooth is disconnected, or to the dial screen if Bluetooth is connected.
- After entering a phone number on the dial screen or selecting a record on the call log or contacts screen, press this button to dial the number.
- When Bluetooth is connected, but no phone number is entered on the Dial screen, press this button to switch to the call log screen. Press this button again to call the first dialed number on the call history.

Speech recognition

- Press this button to activate speech recognition on the infotainment touchscreen, with which you can record voice commands.
- Press a second time to exit speech recognition.

Horn

- Press the horn button area to honk the horn, and release to stop honking.

CAUTION

- Avoid pressing honking for too long, as the horn may be damaged.

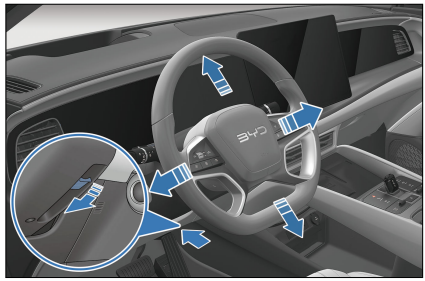
REMINDER

- Observe the traffic laws and use the horn properly.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually

- To adjust the steering wheel position, hold it and operate as follows:
  - Push down the steering wheel adjustment handle, adjust the steering wheel to the desired position, and then return the handle to its original position.



WARNING

- Never adjust the steering wheel while driving, as this is under risk

WARNING

of impaired vehicle control, which can lead to accidents.

- After adjusting the steering wheel, move it up and down to verify that it is securely locked.

Steering Mode

- The steering feel varies from person to person, and so do the evaluation and needs for this feel.
- To set the steering mode, go to infotainment touchscreen → → **Vehicle** → **Intelligent Chassis** → **Steering mode**. Two options are available: **Comfort** and **Sport**.

REMINDER

- Setting the steering mode to sport mode is suggested if the steering wheel feels light when the vehicle is running at a high speed. Steering mode can only be adjusted in normal driving modes (Comfort, Eco, or Sport), with ELKA off and vehicle speed below 80 km/h.

Steering Wheel Heating*

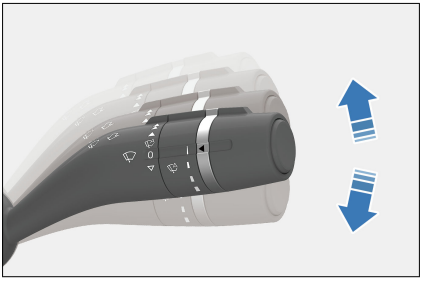
Enable steering wheel heating by any of the following methods:

1. Enable or disable steering wheel heating in the infotainment touchscreen → → **Ventilation/ Heating**.
2. Go to the drop-down shortcut menu, and tap the steering wheel heating icon. Then the setting screen is displayed.
3. Voice control: activate the voice control to enable or disable steering wheel heating.

Wipers

Wiper Switch

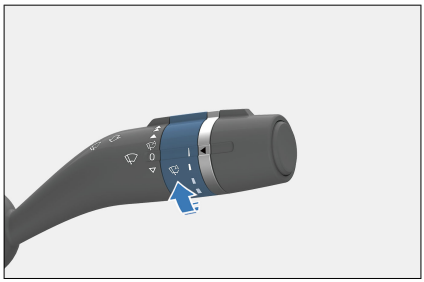
- Push up or pull down the lever to select among the five modes:
  - : Fast
  - : Slow
  - : Auto/Intermittent wipers
  - 0 : OFF
  - : Point-wiping (pulling down the lever from 0 and the wipers wipe at a low speed until you release the lever).



Auto/Intermittent wipers

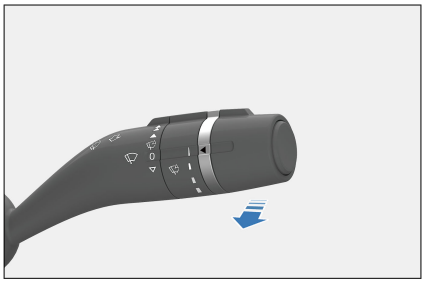
- The rain sensor automatically controls the operation mode of wipers based on the rainfall, and it is located in front of the interior rearview mirror on the front windshield inside the vehicle.
- To use the auto wiper function, turn the wiper switch to the automatic mode, and enable **Auto wiper** on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **Vehicle** → **Comfortable Use**.

- To use the Intermittent wiper function, turn the wiper switch to the automatic mode, and disable **Auto wiper** on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **Vehicle** → **Comfortable Use**.
- Turn the knob to change the rain sensor sensitivity based on real-time rain conditions. A total of four levels are available.
  - Upward: reduces the rain sensor sensitivity.
  - Downward: increases the rain sensor sensitivity.



Front windshield wipers and washer

- To clean the front windshield, pull the wiper switch lever backward (towards the steering wheel) so that the washer sprays washing fluid while the wipers operate.
- The washer spray will stop when the lever is released, and the wipers will operate twice then stop.



CAUTION

- To avoid damage or injury caused by unintended wiper activation, turn off the automatic wiper function when washing the vehicle, during sandstorms, in dry weather, or when there is ice or snow on the windshield.
- The automatic wiper is an auxiliary function. Manually control the wipers when necessary based on actual road conditions to ensure driving safety.

Replacing Wiper Blades

Inspect wiper blades for cracks or partial hardening at least every six months. If they are noted, replace wiper blades. Otherwise, the windshield will streak or will be left unclean after wiping.

CAUTION

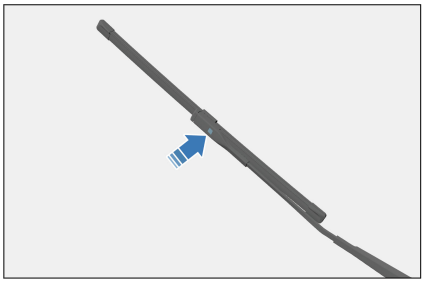
- Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are pulled up, as this may damage the hood and wiper arms.

Replacing Wiper Blades

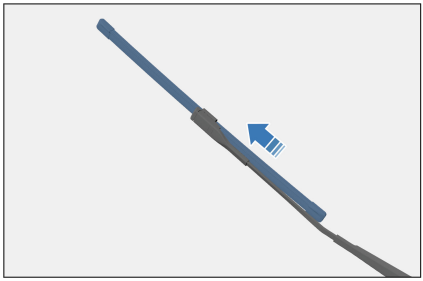
With the ignition on, enable wiper maintenance in infotainment touchscreen → → **Service** → **Overhaul**. When this function is enabled, the wipers rotate to the top for easy maintenance and replacement. After maintenance is complete, you can disable the function to return the wipers to the initial position.

1. Pull up the wiper arm at the driver's side, and then pull up the other at the passenger's side.

2. Press the wiper lock button.



3. Hold the wiper blade and pull it out along the indicated direction.
4. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



CAUTION

- Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are pulled up, as this may damage the hood and wiper arms.
- Lower the wiper blades slowly and avoid direct impact onto the windshield.
- Do not bend the wiper blade, and do not obstruct the wiper blade when the wiper is in operation.

Mirrors

Interior Rearview Mirrors

- The interior rearview mirror is equipped with electronic anti-glare function, which automatically adjusts the color of the mirror according to the surroundings to reduce the interference of rear glare on the driver's field of view.
- Move the interior rearview mirror up, down, left, or right to a suitable position.



WARNING

- Adjust the interior rearview mirror before driving. Do not adjust the rearview mirror while driving. This may distract your attention and cause accidents.
- Do not hang heavy objects from the interior rearview mirror, or shake or drag it with force.
- When manually adjusting the interior rearview mirror, do not forcibly adjust the stuck mirror, to prevent the mirror from falling off.

Side Mirrors

Use the associated switches to adjust the side mirrors to see the sides of the vehicle.

- Side mirror selection buttons: selects the side mirror to be adjusted.
  - : Selects the left side mirror
  - : Selects the right side mirror
- Side mirror adjustment buttons : adjusts the side mirrors to a proper position.



WARNING

- Adjust the side mirrors before driving. Do not adjust the side mirrors while driving. This may distract your attention and cause accidents.

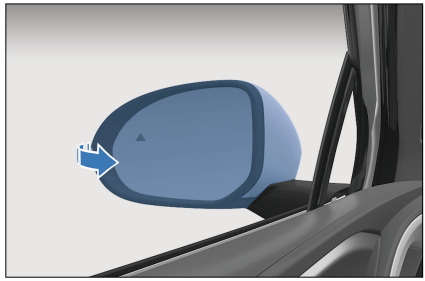
REMINDER

- The power side mirrors have reverse tilt function*. The mirrors can automatically tilt down to a comfortable angle in reverse.
- Do not operate the controller or scrape the surfaces of frozen side mirrors. Use de-icer spray to remove the ice.

Folding Side Mirrors

Folding side mirrors manually

- Push the outer edge of a side mirror to rotate it around the folding axis to the locked position.



Folding side mirrors with power

- Press the button to fold the side mirrors with power. Press the button again to unfold the mirrors.
- Both side mirrors fold automatically when the anti-theft alarm system is armed, and extend automatically when disarmed.

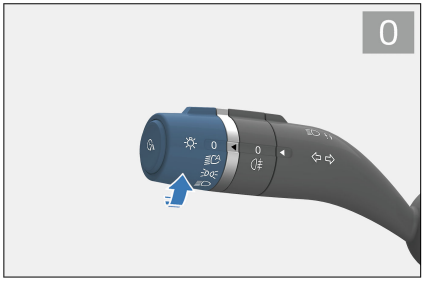


- To enable or disable side mirror auto fold and auto tilt while reversing functions, go to infotainment touchscreen → → **Vehicle** → **Comfortable Use**.

Switches

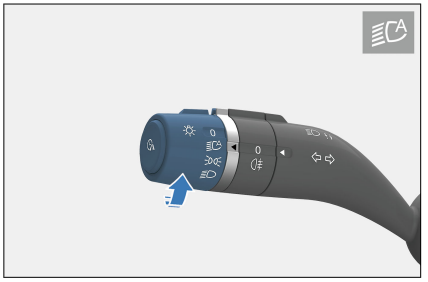
Light Switches

Set the light switch to 0 to turn off all lights except for daytime running lights.



Auto lights

Set the light switch to . The position lights and low beam automatically turn on or off according to the brightness data from the light intensity sensor.

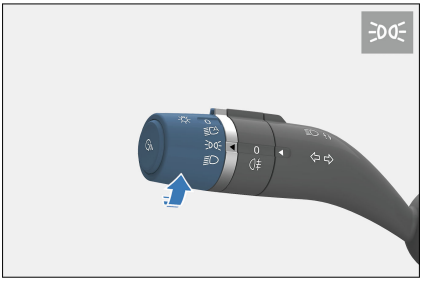


REMINDER

- The light intensity sensor is located on the top of the windshield. Do not block the sensor or let anything splash on it.

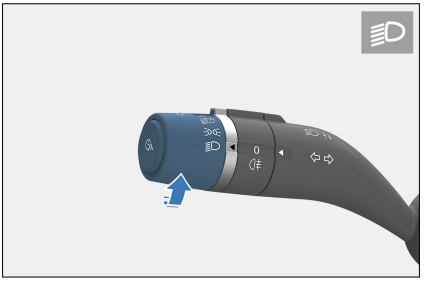
Position lights

Set the light switch to to turn on the front and rear position lights and the license plate light.



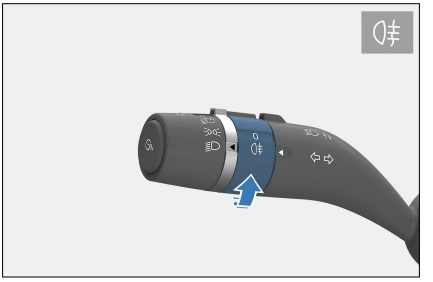
Low beam

Set the light switch to to turn on the low beam.



Rear fog lights

Set the light switch to and rotate the fog light dial to to turn on rear fog lights.



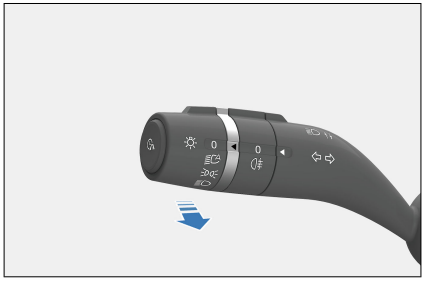
High beam

Set the light switch to and push the light switch lever outward (away from the steering wheel) to turn on the high beam, and restore the lever to the initial position to turn it off.



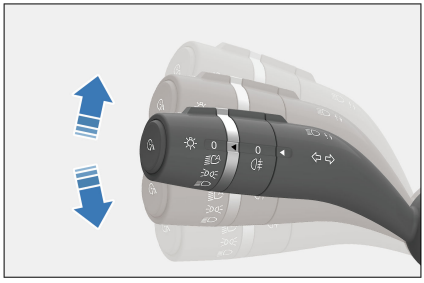
Overtaking light

Pull the lever inward (toward the steering wheel) to turn on the overtaking light. Release the lever so it returns to the intial position and the overtaking light turns off.



Turn signals

- Push up the lever to signal right turn. The right turn signal and its indicator on the instrument cluster flash.
- Pull down the lever to signal left turn. The left turn signal and its indicator on the instrument cluster flash.



CAUTION

- Once turned on, turn signals continue flashing even after the lever is released. They will turn off after the turn is complete. Depending on the driver's driving habits, the turn signals may reset after a full turn of the steering wheel.

Auto light off

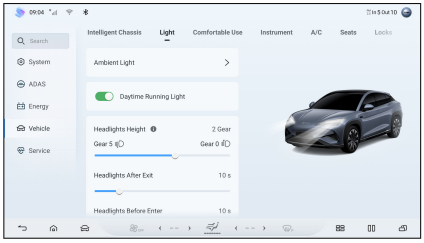
- Conditions to activate the auto light off function: to activate this function, set the light switch to or and switch off the vehicle power.
- With the function is activated, the headlight, position light, rear fog light and high beam turn off in 10 seconds if the driver's door is closed.
- When the function is activated, the headlights and position lights turn off in 10 minutes if the driver's door is open.
- After the lights turn off automatically, if the light status changes, these lights come on in the new status. If the conditions to activate the auto light off function are still met, the function is activated again.
- Disabling the auto light off function: When the vehicle is powered on, the auto light off function is disabled, and the light switch can be operated normally.
- If the auto light off function has turned off the lights and the anti-theft alarm system has been armed, disarming the alarm system makes the lights come on again automatically. If the driver's door remains closed, the lights go off again after 10 seconds. But if any door is open, it turns off the lights in 10 minutes.

Lighting delay

- Headlights after exit:
  - With the light switch set to , , or , when you power off the vehicle, lock four doors, and leave the vehicle, the corresponding lights keep on for 10 seconds (or the set time period).
  - You can set the time period on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **Vehicle** → **Light**. The default time is 10 seconds.
- Headlights before enter:
  - With the light switch set to , , or , when you approach and unlock the vehicle, the corresponding lights keep on for 10 seconds (or the set time period).
  - You can set the time period on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **Vehicle** → **Light**. The default time is 10 seconds.

Adjusting Headlight Height

- When the low beam is on, on the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **Vehicle** → **Lights** → **Headlights height** to adjust the height of the headlights.
- Vehicle loading conditions may vary. Adjust accordingly.



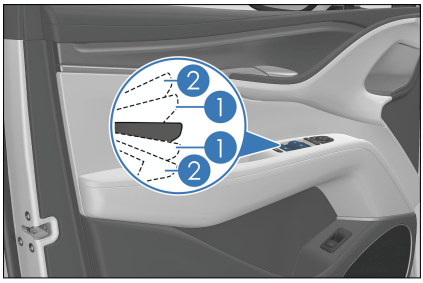
Driver's Door Switches

Power Window Switches

- When the ignition switch is on OK, all the window switches can lift up and down the window.

Window control switch on the driver side

There are two gears of window control: ① and ②, as shown in the illustration.



Manual operation

- Press or pull the window control switch to position ① and hold to lower or raise the associated window. Release the switch to stop the window where you want it.

Auto lifting

- Press or pull the window control switch to position ② and release to automatically lower or raise the associated window all the way.

Anti-pinch function

- If someone or an object is caught by the window when it is rolling up, the window stops and rolls down automatically.

Anti-pinch initialization

- If the low-voltage battery is disconnected while a window is being rolled up or down, the automatic

rolling-up and anti-pinch functions both cease to work.

- Pull and hold the window control switch to raise the window and release it until the window stalls for two seconds.

WARNING

Follow the precautions below to prevent serious injuries or death from window closing:

- Before operating the power windows, ensure that all passengers do not have any body parts that can be caught in the window.
- Do not allow a child to operate the power windows.

CAUTION

- Excessively frequent activation of the anti-pinch function can activate the regulator motor's overheat protection.
- Never try to deliberately activate the anti-pinch function.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is jammed into the window when it is almost completely closed.
- Contacting a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance is recommended if the windows' automatic closing function or anti-pinch function is not working normally.

Delay function

- After the vehicle is powered off, if the front doors are not open, the four-door window controller has a roll-up/down delay period of 10 minutes. During this period, the windows can still be rolled up and down. If either of the front doors is opened during this period, the delay function is canceled, and the switches can no longer be used to operate the windows.

WARNING

- Before closing a power window, ensure occupants' hands are not placed upon the window glass; pinching of hands or fingers can result in serious injuries.

Central Locking

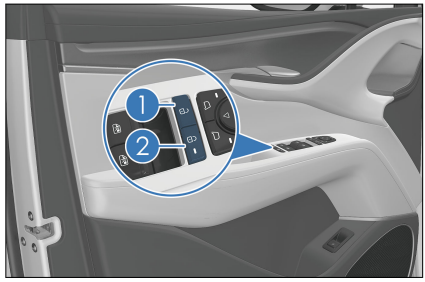
The driver's door is equipped with power door lock switches to lock or unlock all doors.

① Unlocking

Press the central unlock button. All doors are unlocked and the red lock indicator turns off.

② Locking

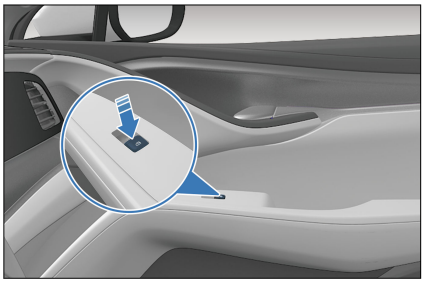
Press the central lock button. All doors are locked and the red lock indicator lights up.



Window Control Switch on Passenger's Side

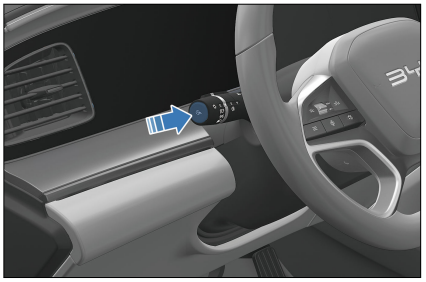
When the ignition is on or off (within the delay function period), use the front passenger and rear door window

switches to operate the respective windows.



Odometer Switch

- Press the odometer switch to switch between "Total Mileage" - "Mileage 1" - "Mileage 2" - "Total Mileage". The switching status is displayed accordingly on the instrument cluster.
- Press and hold "Mileage 1" and "Mileage 2" to clear the mileage information.



Driver Assistance Switches

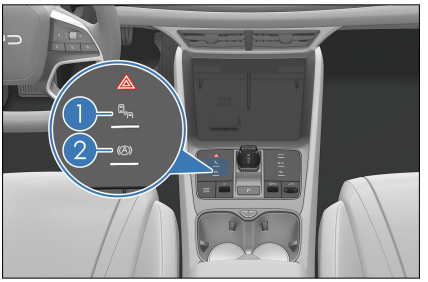
The driver assistance switches include blind spot detection (BSD) switch and automatic vehicle hold (AVH) switch.

① BSD switch

Press this switch to activate blind spot detection (see ***P76*** for details).

② AVH Switch

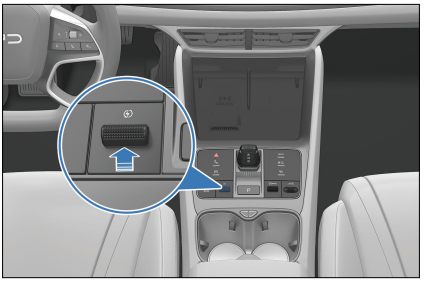
Press this switch to activate automatic vehicle hold (see ***P76*** for details).



Mode Switches

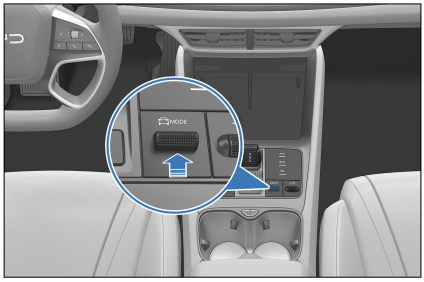
Regenerative braking adjustment lever

- Pull the lever up to increase the regenerative braking force.
- Pull the lever down to switch to standard regenerative braking.



Driving mode adjustment lever

- Available driving modes include confort, eco, sport, and snow mode. Using the stick to choose among different modes tailored to your specific needs.



Snow mode

- Snow mode is designed for slippery surfaces such as grass, snow, ice, or gravel. It optimizes the vehicle's traction, driving, and handling performance.
- To ensure safety, control your speed and gently press the accelerator pedal on slippery roads, even when snow mode is activated.

CAUTION

- Because ESC activation limits the engine torque, momentarily deactivating ESC may help if the vehicle is stuck in deep snow. The ESC system must be restarted after conditions are back to normal (see ***P168***).

Front Passenger Airbag Switch

- The front passenger airbag can be activated or deactivated with a front passenger airbag switch.
- The switch is located on the passenger's side of the dashboard and is accessible when the passenger's door is open.



- The front passenger airbag indicator is located on the ceiling.
- Check that the switch is in the required position.
- Enable or disable the front passenger airbag according to the use of the front passenger seat:
  - When the switch is ON, the front passenger airbag is activated. The front passenger airbag indicator "PASSENGER AIRBAG" is solid on, "ON" and come on, and "OFF" and are off. The front passenger airbag deploys in the event of a moderate to severe collision that meets the necessary deployment conditions.
  - When the switch is OFF, the front passenger airbag is deactivated. The passenger airbag indicator "PASSENGER AIRBAG" is solid on, "ON" and are off, and "OFF" and come on. The front passenger airbag do not deploys in the event of a moderate to severe collision that meets the necessary deployment conditions.

WARNING

- Never use a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger

WARNING

seat with an activated passenger airbag. Failure to do so can result in serious personal injuries or death.

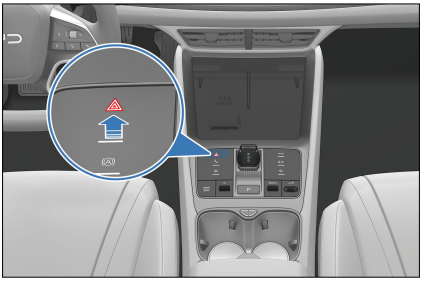
- When the front passenger seat is occupied with an adult, the passenger airbag switch must be turned to "ON" to always keep the front passenger airbag active.
- If the front passenger airbag remains active when the front passenger airbag switch is off, immediately contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- To prevent damage to the airbag system, operate the front passenger airbag switch when the vehicle is on "OFF".
- It is the driver's responsibility to confirm that the front passenger airbag switch is in the correct position for the person sitting in the front passenger seat.

Hazard Warning Light Switch

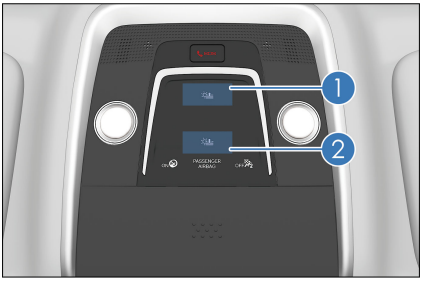
When the ⚠ button is pressed, all turn signals and turn signal indicators on the instrument cluster start flashing. They all stop flashing when the ⚠ button is pressed again.



Sunshade Switches

Opening the sunshade

- Press and hold the sunshade open button ① to open the sunshade manually. Release the button midway to stop the sunshade.
- Release the sunshade open button ① immediately after touching it. The sunshade opens automatically. For the sunshade to stop at its current position, touch the ① or ② button midway.



Closing the sunshade

- Press and hold the sunshade close button ② to close the sunshade manually. Release the button midway to stop the sunshade at its current position.
- If the sunshade has been initialized, releasing the sunshade close button ② immediately after touching it closes the sunshade automatically. For the sunshade to stop at its current

position, touch the ① or button ② midway.

Anti-pinch function

- If the sunshade closing process is obstructed by anything, it will stop and slightly retract.

Initialization

1. Press the sunshade open button open the sunshade fully.
2. Press and hold the sunshade close button so that the sunshade moves to the end and release the button when it stalls for seven seconds.

CAUTION

- When opening or closing the sunroof sunshade, avoid forceful contact with its curtain, to prevent damage.

Emergency Call (E-Call)

① E-Call status indicator

② SOS button



- E-Call refers to emergency call. Pressing and holding the SOS button for 1–10 seconds triggers the E-Call system manually, and pressing and holding the button for 10–20 seconds does not.
- To cancel an emergency call made by mistake, press the SOS button a second time within five seconds.
- The E-Call system activates automatically in the event of airbag deployment.
- When triggered, the system automatically makes an emergency call and communicates relevant vehicle and accident information to a public safety answering point.

CAUTION

- If pressed and held for over 20 seconds, the SOS button will be considered to be short-circuited (stuck). In that case, E-Call cannot be triggered manually.
- The dialed emergency call cannot be canceled manually. The E-Call system will begin a 60-minute callback period after the call is hung up by the public safety answering point or has not been answered 10 consecutive times.

Status	LED Indicator	Beeping
Ignition off or E-Call system failure	Off	\
Power-on self-check mode	Flashing fast - 2 Hz	\

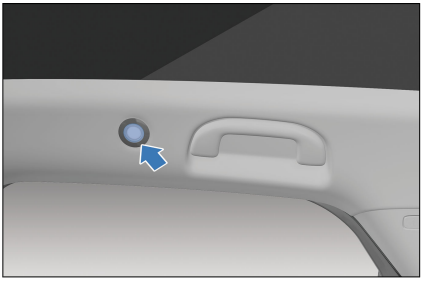
Status	LED Indicator	Beeping
Ignition on and self-check passed	Solid on if self-check is passed	\
E-Call connecting	Flashing - 1 Hz	A beep
E-Call connected	Flashing - 1 Hz	A beep
E-Call ended	Solid on	Two beeps after E-Call ends
Callback time (60 minutes by default)	Solid on	\

Interior Light Switch

Front interior lights



Side Interior Light Switch



- Touch the interior lights to turn on or off the corresponding lights.
- To enable or disable "Auto Interior Lights", swipe down from the top status bar on the infotainment touchscreen to access the shortcut screen.
- In any ignition mode, when "Auto Interior Lights" is enabled, touching the interior light switches the brightness between high and low levels.
- When the vehicle is powered off and "Auto Interior Lights" is enabled, the interior lights will automatically turn off after the door has been open for a period of time.

Ambient Lights*

- To control the brightness, color and area of the ambient light, go to infotainment touchscreen → 🚗 → **Vehicle** → **Light** → **Ambient Light**.

04 USING AND DRIVING

Charging/Discharging Instructions 82
Batteries 97
Usage Precautions 102
Starting and Driving 109
Driver Assistance 119
Other Main Functions 175

Charging/ Discharging Instructions

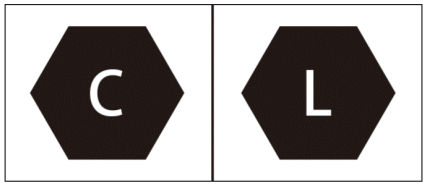
Charging Instructions

Charging Safety Warnings

- Charging equipment uses high-voltage current. Minors are prohibited to charge the vehicle or touch the charging equipment. Keep them away from the vehicle during charging.
- Charging may affect medical or implanted electronic devices. Consult the device manufacturer before charging.
- Charge the vehicle in a safe environment, and avoid charging in damp areas, or areas with fire or heat sources.
  - Protect the charging equipment against water contact on rainy days.
- Before charging:
  - Ensure that the power supply equipment, the charging connector, the charge port, and the charging connection device are free of defects, such as cable wear, rusted ports, cracked casings, or foreign objects in the ports.
  - Do not charge the vehicle when the plug of the charging connector or port, the socket, or metal terminals are loose or damaged by rust or corrosion.
  - When the charging connector, the port, the power plug, or the socket is visibly stained or damp, wipe them with a dry and clean cloth to ensure the connection is dry and clean.
- Use charging equipment that complies with local standards.
  - To avoid charging failure or fire, do not modify, disassemble, or repair the charging equipment and related ports. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider if there is a fault.
  - Do not use charging equipment that does not meet safety standards or has potential safety hazards. Do not allow children to use the charging equipment and keep animals away from the vehicle while charging.
- Ensure that your hands are dry before charging to prevent risk of personal injuries.
- If anything abnormal is found in the vehicle or the charging equipment during charging, stop charging immediately and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Always observe the following charging precautions to prevent damage to the vehicle:
  - Do not shake the charging connector, otherwise the vehicle charge port may be damaged.
  - Do not charge the vehicle in a thunderstorm to prevent risk of lightning strikes.
- Do not open the hood for maintenance while charging.
- After charging, do not disconnect the charging equipment with wet hands or while standing on any wet surface.
  - Before driving, ensure that the charging equipment is disconnected from the charge port.

Compatibility of vehicle and charging infrastructure*

- Compatibiliy signs are located on the vehicle's charging socket, the local charging infrastructure (charging stations and sockets), and on the charging cable.



- The signs refer to standardized charging systems in accordance with DIN EN 62196.

Charging Precautions

- When the SOC bar on the instrument cluster turns red, the high-voltage battery is about to be exhausted. Please charge it immediately, otherwise the service life of the high-voltage battery and your driving experience will be affected.
- Mode 2 charging means charging with an AC charging connector. It is recommended to use the dedicated AC lines and power sockets meeting local standards to avoid line damage and protective trip due to high-power charging, which can affect the normal use of other equipment.
- Observe the following to prevent damage to the charging equipment (charging equipment precautions):
  - Prevent the charging equipment from any mechanical impact, such as falling and colliding with other objects.
  - Do not place the charging equipment near heaters or other heating sources.
  - Never drop the equipment or move it by pulling it directly by the cable. Take caution when moving the equipment.
- It is not recommended to use any additional wire or adapter/connector. If an additional adapter is required, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to choose a suitable cable diameter and the adapter/connector parameters must meet local requirements.
- Switch the ignition off before charging.
- Before charging:
  - Make sure that the charging connector and the charge port are free of foreign objects, and that the protective cap of the charging connector terminal does not get loose or deformed.
  - Hold the charging connector, align the connector with the charge port and push it in, making sure that they are properly connected.
- When charging is complete:
  - Stop charging first and make sure the charge port is unlocked.
  - Pull out the charging connector.
  - Do not force the charging connector out while the charge port is locked, otherwise the charge port may be damaged.
- Precautions during charging:
  - The A/C can be used as normal while the vehicle is being charged. To ensure the charging power, it is recommended to turn off the A/C.
  - It is recommended that no one stay in the vehicle during charging.
  - It is recommended to park the vehicle in a ventilated area during charging.
- The vehicle system automatically stops charging when the high-voltage

battery is fully charged. The charge port is equipped with an electronic lock. Unlock it before unplugging the charging equipment.

- To stop AC or DC charging, turn off the charger before disconnecting the charging connector. In Mode 2 charging, remove the charging connector and then the power plug.
- When charging is complete and the charging connector is unplugged, make sure that the charge port's cap and door are closed, otherwise water or foreign materials may enter the port and affect its normal use.
- During DC charging, the charging power is relatively small during the identification period when the real capability of the charging pile is identified and its maximum output capacity is exerted, thereby bringing a better charging experience to users (only for motor booster DC charging).
- Before starting the vehicle, ensure that the charging equipment is disconnected. The vehicle is ready to drive even if the charging connector is left plugged but not fully locked, which may damage the charging equipment and the vehicle.
- Too high or too low battery temperatures compromise vehicle charging performance.
  - The temperature control system can improve the battery's charging capacity at low temperatures. Due to output capacity limitations of charging piles, the charging time is extended, the heating time becomes longer and the power consumption of heating is increased. This is a normal phenomenon.
  - For faster low-temperature DC charging, charging from low SOC is recommended because, due to the low battery temperature, the charging current is small for vehicles with high SOC in low-temperature environments.
  - To improve your experience, it is recommended to charge the vehicle immediately after using it, as the battery is relatively hot and has better charging performance.
  - In low-temperature regions, it is recommended to charge the vehicle in a heated indoor space.
  - In high-temperature regions, it is recommended to charge in a cool and ventilated place.
- If the battery has not been fully charged for a long time, the instrument cluster may prompt a message showing "Please charge the vehicle to full capacity to allow the battery to balance automatically." It is recommended to fully charge the vehicle as soon as possible to ensure the lifespan of the battery.
- Turning A/C on during low-temperature charging affects the performance of the battery temperature control system and charging.
- It is normal that when the battery temperature control system is working during charging, the charging power displayed on the instrument cluster may fluctuate temporarily.
- Before charging is complete, battery equalization is activated for longer battery life and thus the charging time may be longer.
- The use of A/C may worsen battery temperature control system performance in DC charging at high temperatures, resulting in lower charging performance and longer charging time. To ensure charging efficiency, it is recommended to keep the A/C off during charging.

- When the heating or cooling function is enabled during charging, it is normal that both charging time and power consumption increase slightly.
- During charging, battery cooling may start, and the compressor, fan and other components work when necessary. It is normal that there will be some noise under the hood.
- During charging, the estimated remaining time to full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster and may vary slightly, depending on the temperatures, SOC, and charging facilities. Before charging is completed, "Calculating..." is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- If the charge port door is frozen due to weather or other reasons, do not force it open.
- If the vehicle is to be parked for a lengthy period of time, charge it every three months, and to prolong the service life of the high-voltage battery, charge fully before starting it again.

REMINDER

- Do not force the charge port door open when it is locked.
- Do not force the charging connector in or out while the charge port is locked.
- Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is fully open.
- When the vehicle is charged with an external power supply, it is normal that the cooling fan and A/C compressor may operate automatically for the high-voltage battery to cool down.

Charging Mode

- Scheduled charging (for AC charging only): charge the vehicle regularly at a scheduled charging time set by the user. See ***P91*** for details.
- Immediate charging: charging starts after the charging connector is connected.

General Charging Troubleshooting

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
The charger is connected but charging does not start.	The high-voltage battery has been fully charged.	When the high-voltage battery is fully charged, the charging will stop automatically.
	High-voltage battery temperature is too high or too low.	Keep the vehicle in an environment with appropriate temperature and charge it when the temperature becomes normal.
	The low-voltage battery over-discharges.	Replace the low-voltage battery.
	Charging equipment fails.	If it is verified that the charging equipment's power indicator is working properly, or that there are no other unusual indications, change the charging equipment or contact the charging equipment supplier.

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
	Vehicle display fails.	Verify that there is a charging system fault message on the instrument cluster, then stop the charging. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
Charging stops midway.	There is an AC grid outage.	Charging will restart automatically after power is restored.
	Charging cable is not connected properly.	Verify that the charging connection cable is not loosely connected.
	The high-voltage battery temperature is too high.	Charging stops automatically if the high-voltage battery overheating warning light on the instrument cluster lights up. Charge the vehicle when the battery temperature returns normal.
	Vehicle or charging pile fails.	If there is any fault prompt for the charging pile or the vehicle, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Charging

- Check before charging:
  - Check the charging device for abnormalities such as cracked housing, worn cable, rusted plug, or foreign materials.
  - Do not charge when the charging connection becomes loose.
  - Make sure the port is clear of fluids or foreign objects, and its metal terminals are not rusty or corroded.
- In any of these cases, do not charge. Otherwise, personal injuries may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.

Using Mode 2 Charging Cable

1. Equipment

- Connect the vehicle to an outlet that meets local standards to charge the vehicle.
- Use household sockets that meet the local standards to prevent line damage or tripping due to high-power charging, which can affect the normal use of other devices.
- This Mode 2 charging cable includes a power plug (complying with local standards), a charging connector, a control box, and a charging cable. The plug should be connected to a standard household power socket, and the charging connector to the vehicle's charge port.
- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

WARNING

- See "Charging Instructions" for charging safety warnings.
- The highest working temperature allowed for the charging equipment is 60°C. Store it in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.

WARNING

- When charging, do not place the equipment in the trunk, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tires.
- When using the equipment, prevent it from getting rolled over by the vehicle, dropped, or trampled on.
- Never use the charging equipment if the household power strip cable becomes soft, if the charging connector cable is worn out, if the insulation layer is cracked, or in case of any other damage.
- Never use the equipment if the charging connector, power plug, or power strip is disconnected or broken, or if there is any sign of surface damage.
- To prevent failure of the charge port door, do not open and close it repeatedly. The recommended time interval for opening and closing the port door is at least one second.

CAUTION

- The charging cable must not be placed in a spiral during charging, as this will affect heat dissipation.
- See "Charging Instructions" for specific charging precautions.

REMINDER

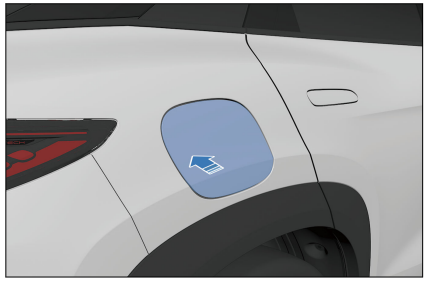
- It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider or local electrician to select an appropriate power supply according to requirements of the charging equipment.

REMINDER

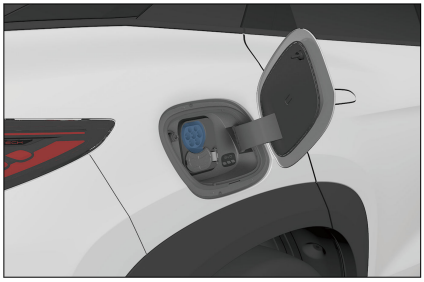
- Charging equipment grounding instructions: The equipment must be properly grounded. In the event of failure of or damage to the equipment, the grounding cable provides a minimum impedance to circuit discharge, reducing the risk of electric shock. The equipment comes with a ground cable connecting its ground point with that of the power plug, which must match a properly installed and well-grounded power supply outlet.

2. Charging

- With the vehicle doors unlocked and preferably powered off, press the charge port door to open it.



- Open the charge port cap (configurations of the actual vehicle prevail), and make sure that no obstacles exist between the head of the charging connector and the end of the charging socket.



REMINDER

- Do not force the charge port door open when it is locked.
- If the charge port door is frozen due to weather or other reasons, it is suggested to warm up it with hot water and then open the port door. Do not force it open.

- Connect to the power supply terminal:
  - Plug the Mode 2 Charging Cable into a household socket.
- Connect to the vehicle port:
  - Plug the charging connector correctly into the port.
  - After the charging connector is inserted, the charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.

REMINDER

- Do not force the charging connector in or out while the charge port is locked.

- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.
  - You can schedule charging on the infotainment touchscreen. See ***P91*** for details.

REMINDER

- During charging, the estimated remaining time to full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster. It is normal that this charging time may vary slightly across temperatures, SOC, and charging facilities.
- Scheduled charging cannot be used when the battery is too low.

3. Stopping charging

- End charging:
  - The charging automatically ends when the vehicle is fully charged.
  - To end the charging early, proceed to the next step.
- Unplug the charging connector:
  - Press the unlock button on the smart key or press the door handle microswitch while carrying the smart key and then pull out the charging connector.

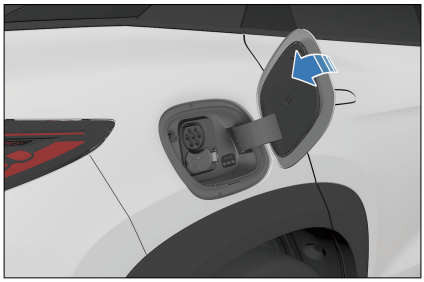
REMINDER

- To unlock the vehicle, press the unlock button on the key (when charging the vehicle with ignition switched off) or press the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby).
- When the immobilizer system is activated, unlock the vehicle to release the charge port immobilizer before pulling out the charging connector.Remove the connector promptly; otherwise, the charge port will re-lock.
- You can activate the immobilizer on the infotainment touchscreen, see ***P95*** for details.

REMINDER

- If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking. For the operating procedure, see ***P96***.
- If you cannot pull the charging connector out directly with the charge port's immobilizer system deactivated, try to unlock the vehicle and pull it again.

- Disconnect the power plug.
- Close the charge port cap* and the port door.
- Store the charging equipment properly.



REMINDER

- Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is fully open.

Using AC Charging Piles

1. Equipment

- AC charging box*:
  - Use a standard-compliant household charging box. For how to use the charging equipment, refer to its user manual and follow the operating steps.
  - Equipment specifications: 7 kw single-phase charging* and 11 kw three-phase charging are supported.

    The single-phase AC charging box consists of a charging box, a charging connector, and a connecting cable. For information on circuit breaker and emergency stop switch, see the charging box user manual.
- AC charging pile
  - Charge the vehicle using a public single-phase AC charging pile or a BYD three-phase AC charging pile. Since some charging piles are not equipped with charging connectors, AC charging connectors need to be prepared.
  - Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

2. Charging

- Unlock the vehicle and open the charge port door:
  - Open the charge port cap* and the port door following instructions in Using Mode 2 Charging Cable.
- Connect to the power supply terminal:
  - Skip this step for AC charging boxes.
  - Skip this step for AC charging piles equipped with charging connectors.
  - Some charging piles are not equipped with charging connectors, prepare AC charging connectors in such cases. Plug the charging connector into the socket of the charging pile.
- Connect to the vehicle port:
  - Plug the charging connector into the port and make sure it is tight.
- Charging settings:

- Skip this step for single-phase AC charging box* or a public AC charging pile without any setting options.
- For public single-phase AC charging pile/box with settings, swipe the card or scan the QR code. See the user manual for charging pile/box details.

- The charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.
- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.
  - You can schedule charging on the infotainment touchscreen. See ***P91*** for details.

3. Stopping charging

- End charging:
  - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or charging is complete.
- Unplug the charging connector:
  - Disconnect as per the instructions in Using Mode 2 Charging Cable.
- Disconnect the power plug.
  - Skip this step for AC charging box*.
  - Skip this step for AC charging piles equipped with charging connectors.
  - If Mode 2 charging cable is used, it is recommended to unplug the charging connector from the vehicle first and then the plug from the charging point.
- Close the charge port cap* and the port door.
- Store the equipment properly.
  - If an AC charging pile/box is used, place the charging connector in its designated location.

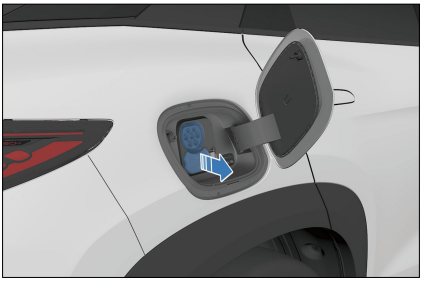
Using DC Charging Piles

1. Equipment

- Charge the vehicle using a public DC charging pile at a charging station.
- Equipment specifications: Check the instructions of the charging piles.
- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

2. Charging

- Unlock the charge port door, then open the port door and cap.
- Connect to the vehicle port:
  - Plug the charging connector into the port and make sure it is tight.
- Operate the charging equipment according to the instructions to start charging.



- The charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.
- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.

3. Stopping charging

- End charging:
  - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or charging is complete.
- Unplug the charging connector:

- Pull out the charging connector.

- When charging is complete, organize the charging equipment and store the charging connector in its designated position.
- Close the charge port cap and the port door.

CAUTION

- If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking (see ***P96***).
- To unlock the charge port after DC charging, press the unlock button twice within three seconds.
- See "Charging Instructions" for specific charging precautions.

REMINDER

- Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is fully open.

Smart Charging

- Smart charging encompasses scheduled charging and scheduled departure*. Scheduled charging allows you to customize the daily start time of the charging session. Scheduled departure enables you to set a desired departure time, before which the vehicle is fully charged, and if needed, the cabin temperature is optimized and the battery is preheated.
- You can access the setting screen either through the infotainment system or voice control:
  - Go to infotainment touchscreen → → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging** → **Smart charging**.
  - Say "Hi BYD, start smart charging/scheduled charging/scheduled departure", "Hi BYD, I want to make smart charging/scheduled charging/scheduled departure", or "Hi BYD, please help me start smart charging/scheduled charging/scheduled departure".
- To exit the setting screen:
  - Tap ⮌ or ⌂ .
  - Say "Hi BYD, end smart charging/scheduled charging/scheduled departure" or "Hi BYD, exit smart charging/scheduled charging/scheduled departure".

REMINDER

- Scheduled charging and scheduled departure cannot be activated simultaneously.

Scheduled charging

① Scheduled charging switch

② Start and end time of charging

③ Repeat cycle

④ Switch to scheduled departure*

⑤ Settings



- The factory default setting is to charge the vehicle immediately. That is, scheduled charging is disabled.
- To schedule a charging, toggle the switch ① on, set the start and end time

② and repeat cycle ③, and save the settings.

- After scheduled charging is set, if you connect the charging connector or press the START/STOP button to power off the vehicle before the charging start time, you will be reminded on the infotainment touchscreen that scheduled charging has been set. Switch to immediate charging if needed.
- You can tap the smart charging setting icon ⑤ to turn off the reminder for plugging in charger.
- Tap ④ to switch to scheduled departure.

CAUTION

- The scheduled charging function is developed for BYD's slow AC charging equipment only. Disable this function when using non-BYD-certified slow AC charging equipment. Otherwise, scheduled or immediate charging may fail due to no response from the equipment, resulting in low SOC or even low voltage of the high-voltage battery.

REMINDER

- The vehicle's power consumption may increase during the scheduled charging standby period. Prolonged standby may result in a reduction of the vehicle's state of charge (SOC) and driving range. This is considered a normal condition.
- You can tap "charge now" on the infotainment touchscreen to charge immediately, but this setting is valid for the current session only. To cancel

REMINDER

all scheduled charging sessions, toggle ① off on the setting screen.

- Scheduled charging is dedicated for BYD AC charging piles. If you need to use this function in a public charging facility, make sure it supports scheduling from the vehicle system.
- When the battery level is low, the vehicle is charged to a certain level before scheduled charging begins. During this process, the infotainment system displays reminders for power-off and charging connector connection, and a corresponding message is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- The schedule setting is invalid for DC charging. Charging begins immediately after a DC charging connector is connected.

Scheduled departure*

① Scheduled departure switch

② Scheduled departure time

③ Repeat cycle

④ Concessionary tariff hours

⑤ Switch to scheduled charging



- To schedule a charging for departure, toggle the switch ① on, set the intended departure time ②, choose

from single-use, daily, or customized repeat cycle options at ③, fill out the concessionary tariff hours ④, and save the settings.

- The system optimizes charging by utilizing off-peak hours, ensuring it completes charging when the power price is lower. If the remaining charging time is longer than the remaining travel duration or the concessionary tariff hours, the vehicle initiates immediate charging to maximize the amount of energy it can acquire.
- The preheating function ensures the battery performs well in low-temperature conditions, ready for optimal performance.
- The intelligent cabin temperature control pre-cools or warms the cabin, ahead of the scheduled departure, ensuring a cozy environment.
- Tap ⑤ to switch to scheduled charging.

REMINDER

- When the SOC reaches a critically low level, the vehicle is charged to a minimum level before scheduled charging begins.
- Ensuring full charge, if not complete after the concessionary tariff hours, the vehicle continues charging until it is fully charged.
- When the vehicle is powered on, low-temperature battery preheating and cabin temperature control are deactivated, but the scheduled charging during concessionary tariff hours are still in effect.
- If the current time exceeds the scheduled departure time, both battery preheating and cabin temperature control are deactivated.

REMINDER

- Battery preheating and cabin temperature control incur a temporary battery usage.
- Battery preheating and cabin temperature control are only available when the SOC is above 40%.

AC Charging with Limited Current*

- To set the AC charging current limit, go to infotainment touchscreen → → → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging**. The vehicle restricts its maximum AC charging current based on your set value.
- Upon restarting, the system retains the prior setting. To disable the limit, set it to **MAX** before or during the charging session, enabling full capacity charging, which is limited by the grid's capacity.

REMINDER

- The actual charging current might be lower than the set value due to equipment and grid restrictions.

Discharging Instructions

- This vehicle is equipped with vehicle-to-load (V2L) function.

WARNING

- Do not touch any metal terminal of the discharging socket or the vehicle charge port during discharging.

WARNING

- Stop discharging immediately if there are any abnormalities such as peculiar smell and smoke.
- See ***P82*** for safety warnings.
- Store the product in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- When discharging, do not place the equipment in the trunk, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tires to prevent it from falling and being rolled over by the vehicle and trampled on.
- Never use the equipment if the power strip cable becomes soft, the discharging connector cable is worn out, the insulation layer is cracked, or any other damage occurs.
- Never use the equipment when the discharging connector or power strip is disconnected or broken, or when there is any sign of surface damage.

CAUTION

- For precautions concerning use of the discharge connection device, refer to the charging equipment precautions in ***P83***.
- Before discharging, confirm the vehicle SOC and estimate the remaining driving range.
- Before V2L discharging, ensure that the load is turned off.

REMINDER

- The V2L function is recommended only when the vehicle SOC is high.

REMINDER

- The V2L function is restricted when the vehicle SOC is low.
- When the vehicle is powered off, the static power consumption of the vehicle will increase if the V2L connection device is connected for an extended period without any output. Therefore, removing the discharging/charging connector is recommended when the device is not used.

Discharging

1. Equipment

- Vehicle-to-load (V2L) equipment*: The device consists of a discharging connector, a power strip, a cable, and a discharge connector protective cover.
- Equipment specifications: a V2L discharging connection device that complies with local standards, with a maximum discharge power of 3.3 kW.

2. Starting discharging

- Before discharging, disarm the anti-theft alarm system.
- Unlock the charge port door, and then open the port door and cap.
- Check before discharging:
  - Ensure that the vehicle SOC is at least 15%.
  - Ensure the V2L connecting device casing is not cracked, and its plug is free from rust or obstructions.
  - Ensure that there is no water or foreign material inside the charge port and that metal terminals are not damaged and free from rust or corrosion.

- Do not discharge if the above second or third condition is found; otherwise, short circuit or electric shock so caused could lead to personal injuries.

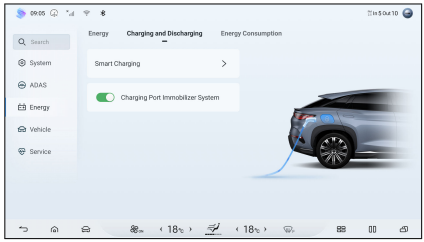
- Connect the discharge connection device:
  - Connect the V2L discharge device to the charge port. The power strip indicator lights up when the strip is powered and ready for use.
- Start discharging:
  - After the device is connected, discharge begins and discharging information is displayed on the instrument cluster.

3. Stopping discharging

- End discharging:
  - Disconnect the load.
- Disconnect the discharge connection device:
  - Unplug the discharging device.
  - Close the charge port cap and the port door.
- Organize the equipment:
  - Store the equipment properly when discharging is complete.

Charging Port Immobilizer System

- In order to prevent the charging connector from being stolen, the vehicle charge port is anti-theft with the charging port immobilizer system. The immobilizer is disabled by default. To enable the function, go to infotainment touchscreen → → → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging** → **Charging port immobilizer system**.



- When the immobilizer is activated, the charging connector will lock if charging connector is connected and the four doors, hood and trunk lid are locked. To disconnect the connector, unlock the vehicle first.

Unlocking

- When the immobilizer is enabled, unlock the vehicle and unplug the charging connector during charging in the following ways:
  - When it is on OFF status, press the unlock button on the smart key to unlock.
  - Press the microswitch on the exterior handle of the driver's door to unlock.
  - Press the central unlock button on the driver's door to unlock.

No.	Charging Port Immobilizer System Status	Vehicle Door Anti-theft Lock Status	Charging Connector Removable or Not
1	Enabled	Locked	No
2	Enabled	Enabled	Yes

No.	Charging Port Immobilizer System Status	Vehicle Door Anti-theft Lock Status	Charging Connector Removable or Not
3	Disabled	Locked	Yes
4	Disabled	Enabled	Yes

CAUTION

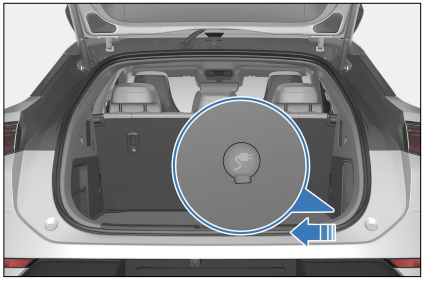
- The charging connector must be removed promptly after the charge port immobilizer is released; otherwise, the charge port will re-lock after a short time.

Emergency Unlocking of Charge Port

- When the charging connector cannot be unplugged due to failure of the immobilizer system, unlock the charge port manually and unplug the charging connector.

Charge port lock dragline

1. Open the trunk. There is a dragline for the charging connector on the right side panel inside the trunk.
2. Open the cap on the panel and pull the dragline to unlock the charging connector.
3. Put the cap back after the connector is pulled out.



REMINDER

- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Driving Range Display

The default driving range display mode is **Standard**. You can change the display mode in infotainment touchscreen → → **Energy** → **Energy** → **Range display mode**.

- Standard mode: displays the driving range based on the result of comprehensive working condition test.
- Dynamic mode: displays the estimated driving range based on the available battery power and current average energy consumption.
- The set driving range display mode is memorized by the system. When the vehicle is powered off and then on, the display mode set last time will be maintained.

REMINDER

- When the Dynamic driving range display mode is set:
  - The driving range that is displayed after a full charge may vary, depending on calculations of the energy consumed the last time the vehicle is used.

REMINDER

- The displayed driving range is adjusted based on whether the A/C is on, selection of driving mode, and the driver's driving habits, so that this range can be closer to the estimated remaining range under current use.

Batteries

High-Voltage Battery

- The vehicle is powered by a high-voltage battery that can be charged and discharged repeatedly. The high-voltage battery is charged by an external power source or through energy recovery when the vehicle brakes or coasts.
- The high-voltage battery is located under the vehicle floor, so be careful and slow down to avoid bumping when driving on bumpy or uneven roads. If bumping occurs, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

CAUTION

- When the ignition is switched on, the high-voltage lines will be connected.
- For vehicles with normal high-voltage battery status, the mileage will change due to different driving habits, road conditions, temperatures, and whether the electrical equipment is turned on or off.
- To prolong the battery life and ensure the battery safety, the vehicle switches to trickle charging mode at high SOC, and the charging time may be prolonged.
- Due to the chemical characteristics of the battery itself, the battery capacity of vehicles that have been used for a period of time has natural degradation, and their mileage will reduce. When you find that the mileage of your vehicle has decreased, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for check. The store-side inspection can confirm whether the reduction of mileage is normal.

Battery Properties

- It is normal that vehicle performance is affected by battery electrochemical properties and self-protection and varies to some extent in the following conditions:
  - When SOC is high, the regenerative braking performance may decline.
  - The vehicle switches to trickle charging mode at high SOC. If the charging time is prolonged, the estimated remaining charging time displayed on the instrument cluster may not be accurate.
  - When SOC is low, the acceleration performance may decline.
  - When the high-voltage battery is low, V2L is unavailable. Charge the battery promptly.
  - At high or low temperatures, it is normal that the charging and discharging capabilities of the high-voltage battery decline, and the charging time is prolonged. Power

performance may also decline under extreme temperatures.

- When charging in low temperatures, the temperature control system can significantly improve charging capability. See "Charging Precautions" for details.
- When the vehicle is used at low temperatures, the battery's temperature control system will start heating the battery as appropriate to ensure the driving power and discharging performance and improve your driving experience. When the vehicle is driven over short distances, heating may be ineffective, which increases power consumption and decreases driving range.

- When the high-voltage battery is normal, the driving range of the vehicle varies with the following factors:
  - Driving habit: For example, the range in frequent acceleration or deceleration is shorter than that at constant speeds, and the range is shorter when driving at high speeds than when at low speeds.
  - Road conditions: For example, the range driven in rough conditions or on long slopes is shorter than that in normal conditions and on even roads.
  - Temperature: The driving range at low temperatures is shorter than that at ambient temperatures.
  - Use of electric equipment: For example, the range driven with A/C on is shorter than that with A/C off.
  - Usable capacity of the high-voltage battery is lower in cold weather and reduces as the temperature decreases. If the vehicle with high battery level is charged at low temperatures, the SOC may quickly jump to 100%.
- The available battery capacity decreases as the vehicle is used over time.

Battery Usage Tips

- It is recommended to use the vehicle at temperatures between -10°C to 40°C. When SOC is low, timely charge the vehicle to ensure enough driving range and good acceleration performance.
- To ensure long term performance, avoid driving in extreme temperatures for over 24 hours.
- In low ambient temperatures, if the vehicle must be stored for a long time, it can be placed in an underground garage or other warmer area to reduce loss of battery heat, maintaining vehicle performance.
- Frequent and sudden acceleration or deceleration should be avoided. Preferably drive the vehicle on flat and dry roads. When necessary, turn off high-power equipment such as A/C or adjust the A/C temperature to reduce power consumption of such devices and increase the driving range.
- When the vehicle is used for the first time or after a long idle period, the SOC displayed on the instrument cluster may not be correct. It is recommended to fully charge the vehicle first.
- It is recommended to fully charge the vehicle at a regular basis (at least once a week), and fully charge it from low battery (SOC <10%) once every three to six months.
- Under extreme working conditions (such as frequent sudden acceleration/ deceleration) that cause battery overheating, if the temperature of high-voltage battery is excessively high, it is normal for discharging capability to decrease gradually. If

the battery temperature keeps rising, the fault warning light lights up on the instrument cluster. In that case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

- When the battery SOC increases or decreases abnormally, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

WARNING

- In the event of an emergency or accident, be aware of the following warnings:
  - To avoid personal injuries, do not touch the high-voltage battery directly.
  - Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible.
  - If the high-voltage battery is damaged and leaking fluid, avoid any contact with the fluid. If it comes into contact with skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water, and seek immediate medical attention.
  - If the vehicle catches fire, use dedicated fire extinguishers instead of water-based fire extinguishers.

CAUTION

- To ensure safety of the high-voltage battery, stop the vehicle away from flammable and explosive materials, ignition sources and various hazardous chemicals.
- Prolonged exposure to heat sources and direct sunlight reduce the service life of the high-voltage battery.

CAUTION

- As the high-voltage battery is arranged at the bottom of the vehicle, careful driving is recommended in case of bumpy roads. If there is a collision with the high-voltage battery, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately for maintenance.
- Do not add battery coolant by users themselves. If needed, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- No one is allowed to enter the vehicle when the battery pack needs to be repaired.

Recycling the High-Voltage Battery

How to scrap an NEV:

1. Take the vehicle to the BYD recycling service provider that will assess the residual value of the high-voltage battery.
2. Take the assessed vehicle to the recycling organization to disassemble the high-voltage battery.
3. Take the battery to the recycling service provider which will buy back the battery.

WARNING

- New energy car owners have the responsibility and obligation to hand over waste high-voltage batteries to the recycling service outlet. Anyone who hands over a used high-voltage battery to any other organization or individual, or removes/disassembles a high-voltage battery without authorization, shall be liable for

WARNING

any environmental pollution or safety incident so caused.

Low-Voltage Battery

The low-voltage battery is located under the left front seat.

- The battery works in normal, sleep, ultra-low power, or low voltage protection mode. The purpose is to protect the battery cell from damage. If the vehicle system is in good condition, the vehicle switches between these modes automatically, having no effect on your use of the vehicle.
- To prevent the SOC of the low-voltage battery becoming too low, the intelligent charging function is triggered automatically when conditions are met (ignition off, high-voltage battery discharging allowed, and low-voltage battery level below the design value).
- When the intelligent charging function is triggered, the low-voltage battery is charged through the high-voltage battery. Therefore, it is normal that the SOC or the pure-electric driving range displayed on the instrument cluster decreases when the vehicle is powered on after an idle period.
- If intelligent charging fails, the low-voltage battery may cut off the vehicle's power supply. If you find before use that the vehicle is not powered, try to activate the low-voltage battery by pressing the driver's door microswitch continuously, and immediately power on the vehicle to charge the low-voltage battery. It is recommended to charge it for more than one hour.

WARNING

- The low-voltage battery contains a corrosive solution. To prevent damage to the battery or injury, do not disassemble or repair the battery.
- Do not disassemble or dismantle the low-voltage battery. Any organization or individual to do so shall bear the responsibility for environmental pollution or accidents.
- Since the low-voltage battery may produce combustible and explosive hydrogen gas, use tools in such a manner that the battery would not produce sparks. Do not smoke or use open flames near the battery.
- Avoid electrolyte contact with eyes, skin or clothing. In case that happens, use baking soda water to clean the skin, and plenty of water to rinse the eyes, and immediately seek medical attention.
- In case of mouth contact with the electrolyte, seek medical attention immediately.
- Keep children away from the low-voltage battery.

CAUTION

- The low-voltage battery contains relays. Thus, it is normal that relay operating sounds may be emitted from the battery.
- The low-voltage battery shall be charged with professional charging tools, and shall not be removed for recharging by users themselves.

CAUTION

- The low-voltage battery has a built-in power manager. Do not disassemble or repair the battery to avoid damaging the battery or causing personal injuries.
- The low-voltage battery needs to communicate with the vehicle for normal use, so it is important to connect its connector and wiring harness correctly.

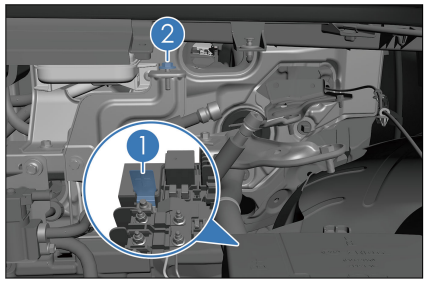
Waking up the Vehicle from Low SOC

Wake-up using the driver's door microswitch

- The low-voltage battery features the dormant/wake-up function. The low-voltage battery may enter a dormant state after long-term parking. In that case, the vehicle cannot be remotely located or unlocked with the smart key. In this case, press and hold the microswitch on the driver's door handle (while carrying the smart key) to activate the low-voltage battery.
- If the low-voltage battery is extremely low, the instrument cluster may display corresponding messages and the vehicle may goes dormant again. Start the vehicle immediately and keep it started for over 15 minutes.

Wake-up by jump start

- When the vehicle cannot be woken up and unlocked using the driver's door microswitch, use the mechanical key to open the door. Then, use an external 12 V power supply and two dedicated jump-start cables to start the vehicle.
- Jump starting can only be performed through the dedicated interface of the under-hood PDB. The connection terminals are shown in the illustration.
  - Positive terminal ①
  - Negative terminal ②



- If the vehicle cannot be woken up and started following the above steps, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

WARNING

- Never jump start another vehicle with this vehicle, because this may damage your low-voltage battery.
- If the low-voltage battery is too low or the battery fails, jump starting may be required. Carefully read and strictly follow the jump starting instructions in this manual.
- Before jump starting, check the battery conditions. Do not jump start the vehicle with freezing electrolyte.
- Make sure the environment is well-ventilated and free from any fire sources.
- The low-voltage battery contains an intelligent control module. To prevent battery damage, do not disassemble or repair this battery, except in an emergency.
- Disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery before performing parts replacement and vehicle repairs.

CAUTION

- It is recommended that jump starting be performed under professional guidance due to the limited operating space and electrical risks in the under-hood PDB area.
- Use a 12–14.2 V jump-starting power supply and limit each jump-starting attempt to 1 minute, or the low-voltage battery may be damaged.
- Do not clean the low-voltage battery with liquid to prevent ingress.

Intelligent Charging

- If the high-voltage battery has sufficient power, it will charge the low-voltage battery when the latter is detected to be low.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle is stored for a long time, it is normal that the smart charging function may be activated with fans in the hood working.
- Power for intelligent charging comes from the high-voltage battery pack, so it is normal that an SOC decrease is noticed when the vehicle is powered on.

Usage Precautions

Break-in Period

- If the powertrain is hard to start or frequently stops turning, inspect the vehicle immediately.
- If the powertrain makes any abnormal sounds, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- If the powertrain has severe coolant and oil leakage, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- The powertrain needs break-in. This should preferably be done within the first 2,000 km in economic mode. Steady driving instead of high-speed driving is recommended. The following practices effectively prolong vehicle service life:
  - Avoid flooring the accelerator pedal when starting and driving the vehicle.
  - Do not maintain a high or low speed for too long.
  - Avoid speeding.
  - Do not use the vehicle to tow other vehicles within the first 2,000 km of mileage.

Trailer Towing

- The vehicle can tow a trailer only when equipped with towing function.
- Do not make non-approved modifications. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to install the towing kit and related software updates. BYD does not assume any responsibility for injuries or damage caused by non-approved modifications.
- The towing capacity depends on various factors such as vehicle specifications, loads, road conditions, and trailer specifications. The total towing weight must not exceed the limits below:

Item	Parameter	Note
Maximum towing capacity (braked)	750 kg (rear-wheel drive) 1500 kg (four-wheel drive)	Maximum total towing capacity allowed when the trailer is braked
Maximum towing capacity (unbraked)	750 kg	Maximum total towing capacity allowed when the trailer is unbraked
Maximum vertical load	75 kg (rear-wheel drive) 150 kg (four-wheel drive)	Maximum vertical load allowed on ball joint

1. The maximum allowed towing capacity equals the total trailer weight, which includes all cargo and additional equipment.

2. Maximum vertical load refers to the downward pressure exerted by the weight of the trailer on the trailer hitch when the vehicle and the trailer are stationary.

- To tow a trailer, adjust the tire pressure to accommodate additional loads. Keep front tires inflated to 290 kPa and rear tires to 310 kPa.
- Observe applicable local laws and regulations regarding towing. For driving safety, avoid speeding and overloading.
- For towing, the technically permissible maximum mass on the rear axle may be exceeded by no more than 15% and the technically permissible laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by no more than 100 kg. In these instances, the vehicle speed must not exceed 100 km/h and the rear tire pressure must be at least 20 kPa above the tire pressure recommended for normal use.
- Towing other vehicles will have an adverse impact on the vehicle, including maneuverability, performance, braking, endurance, economic driving or power consumption.
- BYD does not assume any responsibility for damage or injuries resulting from towing a trailer due to failure to comply with the proper guidelines. Damage caused by towing a trailer is not covered by the warranty.
- For detailed towing instructions, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- The tow bar is for towing trailers only. Do not use it to get unstuck or tow trapped vehicles to prevent vehicle damage and even personal injuries.

Driving Safety Precautions

No Drunk Driving

Even a small amount of alcohol can reduce a driver's ability to respond to traffic condition changes. The higher the level of alcohol, the less responsive the driver will be. Therefore, never drive while under the influence.

No Speeding

Speeding is a major cause of fatal accidents. Faster speeds generally entail higher risk. Therefore, maintain a speed safe for the road traffic conditions.

Keeping the Vehicle Safe for Driving

Tire bursts and mechanical faults are extremely dangerous. To reduce the possibility of such faults, frequently check the vehicle's condition, and regularly complete the specified inspections.

CAUTION

- Any driver must possess a driver's license before driving a vehicle.
- Do not drive when fatigued.
- Always follow the traffic regulations when driving a vehicle.
- During driving, please focus on driving, and avoid activity unrelated to driving (such as making / receiving phone calls and adjusting buttons).

Vehicle Use Suggestions

Suggestions for prolong the battery usage:

- When the vehicle is not to be operated for over seven days, it is recommended that the battery SOC should be kept at 40%-60%, or the high-voltage battery service life may be reduced.
- When the vehicle is not to be operated for over three months, the high-voltage battery must be fully charged and then discharged to 40%-60%. Otherwise, over-discharge may lead to battery performance degradation or even damage. Any vehicle fault or damage so caused will not be warranted.
- During operation of the vehicle, if the instrument cluster displays the pure electric driving mileage as 0, it indicates the battery SOC is low. In this case, charge the high-voltage battery in time and avoid operating the vehicle with low SOC for a long time.
- For optimal battery performance, use a charging connector to fully charge the battery regularly, and the recommended frequency is once a week at least.
- To maintain long-term performance, avoid continuously exposing the vehicle to an environment with a temperature above 60°C or below -30°C for over 24 hours.
- If the tray dented inward or there is scrarification under the battery package tray, it is suggested to check at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid repeated rapid acceleration or deceleration whenever possible.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid operating the vehicle continuously for a long time whenever possible; otherwise, the excessively high battery temperature will affect vehicle performance.
- If the instrument cluster malfunctions when driving, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- When the high-voltage battery temperature is high, the vehicle performance will be limited to some extent. In this case, stop the vehicle and wait until the temperature drops before operating.

REMINDER

- If the meter drops to zero, the battery must be recharged. If it is not recharged within seven days, the battery may suffer permanent damage. Such damage is not covered by BYD warranty terms.
- Driving range depends on many factors, such as the vehicle's available power, vehicle age (current battery life), weather, temperature, road conditions and driving habits. Compared with under normal temperatures, the pure-electric driving range is somewhat reduced and power performance will also be affected in low or high temperature environments.

Saving Energy and Extending Vehicle Service Life

- Saving energy is simple and easy, and it helps prolong the vehicle's service life.
- Here are some tips for saving energy and repair cost:

1. Regenerative braking setting:

- The vehicle is equipped with regenerative braking and you can set the regenerative braking intensity in the infotainment touchscreen → → **Energy** → **Energy Manager**. In high energy recovery mode, more energy is recovered during vehicle braking and coasting.You can set to suit to your driving habits.

2. Maintaining constant speed:

- Constant speeds save energy. Sudden acceleration, sharp turns and emergency braking increase consumption.
- Speeds should be kept constant according to traffic conditions. Additional energy is consumed each time the accelerator is pushed.
- Acceleration should be gradual. Avoid sudden startup, acceleration, or deceleration.
- Prevent emergency braking, and subsequent brake wear, by keeping an appropriate distance from vehicles ahead, and paying attention to traffic lights.
- Congested roads increase energy consumption.
- Keep moderate speeds in motorways. The higher the speed, the higher the consumption. Maintaining vehicle speed within the economical speed range can save power.

3. Reducing load:

- Energy consumption is higher when air conditioning is used. Turn off the A/C to reduce power consumption. When outside temperatures are moderate, use fresh air mode.
- Do not overload the vehicle unnecessarily. Excessive weights add the load of vehicle, increasing energy consumption.

4. Other tips:

- Make sure tire pressure is correct. Low tire pressure increases energy consumption and wear.
- Keep front wheels properly aligned, avoid driving into curbstones, and drive slowly in rough terrain. Misalignment of the front wheels not only increases tire wear, but also increases load on the powertrain and power consumption.

- Keep the bottom of the vehicle clean and mud free. This reduces vehicle weight and prevents corrosion.

REMINDER

- Do not coast in Neutral gear.

Carrying Luggage

- This vehicle has multiple storage spaces. Overloading or improper accommodation may affect maneuverability, stability and normal operation of the vehicle, and reduce its safety.
- The glove box, storage boxes on interior trim panels and seatback pockets are designed for small and light objects, while the trunk for large and heavy objects.
- Make sure the vehicle's total load (vehicle + passengers + luggage) remains within the specified maximum weight.

WARNING

- Overloading and improper accommodation may affect stability and vehicle control, which may lead to accidents.
- Observe the maximum weight limit and other loading guidelines in this manual.
- Do not carry highly magnetic items, as they might interfere in the vehicle's normal operations.

Carrying Luggage in the Passenger Area

- All items that could be thrown inwards and thus injure occupants in case of a collision must be properly placed and secured.
- Do not place any objects on the inner side of rear windshield. Otherwise, these objects will block the driver's line of sight and will be thrown here and there inside the vehicle in case of collision.
- Ensure that items placed on the floor behind the front seat do not roll under the seat, so as to avoid affecting the driver's ability to control the pedals or normal seat adjustment. Do not stack items to a height taller than the front seatbacks.
- Make sure the glove box is always closed while driving. If the glove box is open, the occupant's knees may be injured in case of a collision or an emergency stop.

REMINDER

- Do not pile up toys in the vehicle, as this may affect driving safety and present a hazard to the children, especially in case of emergency braking or collision.

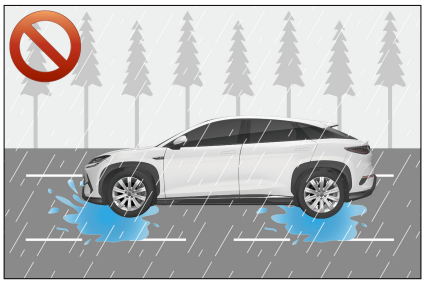
Loading the Trunk

- Place luggage evenly in the trunk. Put heavier items at the bottom and as far in as possible.
- Secure items with ropes or straps so that they will not move while driving. Do not stack items to a height taller than seatbacks.
- For trunk strapping or fastening supplies, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Wading into Water

- Before driving into flooded areas, check the water depth and make sure it does not exceed the vehicle's lower edge.

- If crossing a flooded area is necessary, turn off the air conditioner and keep acceleration steady to slowly cross over.



- Never stop, back up, or turn off the vehicle in flooded areas.
- After crossing over, press the brake pedal several times to dry out the disks and recover brake performance.
- Be careful when driving through deep water, as brakes may get wet.
- Do not wade into water unless necessary.

WARNING

- Drive carefully to avoid accident when there is any water or slurry on the brake disc surface, as this may increase the brake response time thus extending the braking distance.
- Carefully apply any wet brake, and remove ice or water on it.
- Avoid emergency braking as far as possible after driving through any waterlogged road section.
- If the vehicle drives on the waterlogged road. prevent water from entering the motor, otherwise the motor will be damaged seriously. Such damaged is not covered by the vehicle's warranty

WARNING

- After the vehicle drives through waterlogged road sections, vehicle components, such as drive system, driving system and automotive electric system may also be damaged seriously. Such damage is not covered by the vehicle's warranty either.
- Be sure to find a sheltered place when charging the vehicle on rainy days. If the vehicle is immersed in water or wades through water over the doorsill, which may cause water ingress in high-voltage components, promptly contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for testing and troubleshooting.
- Do not drive the vehicle on the road where the depth of accumulated water exceeds half of the tires.

Influence of water ingress in high-voltage components:

- Water getting into high-voltage components, which are electronic devices, may not be fully dried out by any means.
- Water ingress seriously compromises insulation of high-voltage components, and conductive substances in water may lead to short circuit of high-voltage components or such risk in the entire high-voltage system. This significantly affects the safety and service performance of the vehicle.
- The reduced ingress protection rating and voltage withstanding performance due to water in high-voltage components pose a high safety risk.

Fire Prevention

To prevent vehicle fires in a timely and effective manner, pay attention to the following during use of the vehicle:

- No flammable or explosive items are allowed in the vehicle.
  - Temperatures may reach 60-70°C in a vehicle exposed to direct sunlight in summer. Therefore, flammable and explosive items, such as lighters, cleaning agents and perfumes, stored in the vehicle can cause a fire or even explosion easily.
- Make sure cigarettes are thoroughly put out.
  - Smoking is harmful to your health and may cause a fire. Cigarettes that not thoroughly put out may cause a fire.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for regular vehicle checks.
  - Check vehicle wiring, connections, wiring harnesses, insulation, and fixed position regularly. Deal with identified problems promptly.
- Do not refit vehicle wiring or add any unauthorized electrical appliance.
  - The addition of extra electrical appliances, such as high-power audio systems, and light fixtures, may overload and overheat the wiring harness and increase the risk of fire.
  - Improper refitting of electrical appliances or wiring may cause a fire due to contact resistance and abnormal heating. Fuses or other replacement wires in excess of relevant electrical rating are strictly prohibited.
- Select a proper parking location.
  - When parking the vehicle, try to avoid sun exposure.
  - When the vehicle is parked, especially in summer, do check whether there are any flammables such as dry grasses, dead woods, leaves or wheat straws under the vehicle. If any, a fire may be caused.
  - When the vehicle is running, avoid driving on the road sections piled up with flammables such as dry leaves, wheat straws and grasses, or immediately stop the vehicle to check whether any flammables are carried along after passing such road sections.
- Keep a lightweight fire extinguisher in the vehicle and know how to use it.
  - In order to ensure vehicle safety, a fire extinguisher should be equipped in the vehicle, and be checked and replaced regularly. Also, you should familiarize yourself with use of the fire extinguisher and be prepared for any accidents.
- Disconnect the negative cable of the low-voltage battery when the vehicle is being serviced or repaired.
- In the event of a fire in the vehicle, take effective measures in a timely and calm manner to minimize any losses:
  - Fires typically show initial warning signs, such as abnormal noises and odors in the vehicle body. When abnormal conditions are found, turn off and stop the vehicle immediately. It is best to park the vehicle in a windproof place, and then put out the fire using the fire extinguisher in the vehicle.
  - Call the fire alarm in time, and also dial the insurance company's reporting number and ask the company to come to the fire site for handling.

- Look for the ignition point. If the front compartment is smoking, do not open the hood immediately. (Doing so will let a large amount of air in and cause fire spreading. There is limited comburent in the front compartment. Keeping the hood closed can control the fire so that the fire can be easily put out). Point the on-board fire extinguisher at the ignition point from the hood gap to put the fire out, or seek help from the passing cars. If you can borrow more fire extinguishers, open the hood to put it out when you cannot see any flame from outside.
- If the fire brigade is involved, ask for a duty performance certificate and a description of fire cause.
- After occurrence of the accident, contact the insurance company for post-event handling in a timely manner.

REMINDER

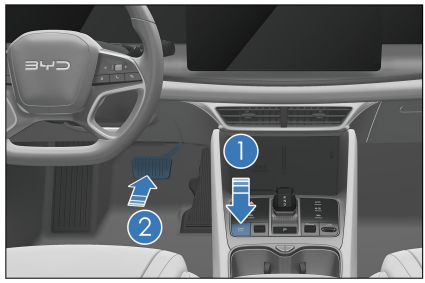
- In order to mitigate losses in the event of an accident, the purchase of commercial insurance like fire loss and theft coverage is recommended.

Starting and Driving

Starting the Vehicle

In normal cases, start the vehicle as below:

- Carry a valid smart key with you, depress the brake pedal ② and press the START/STOP button ① at the same time, and then the OK indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is ready for driving.
- Shift to Drive or Reverse, and then the electronic parking brake will be released automatically. Do not start driving the vehicle until hearing a motor release sound from the electronic parking brake system.



Situations when the vehicle cannot power on

- The vehicle cannot power on in the following situations:
  - After you press the "START" button, if the smart key warning light turns on, a beep sounds, and the message "No key detected" is displayed on the instrument cluster, the key may not be in the vehicle or cannot be detected due to interference.
  - The smart key may not work properly in certain locations, for example, on the dashboard, in the glove box, on the floor, in the cup holder, or in the trunk, and the vehicle cannot be started in such cases.
- Pressing the START button may not enable the start function in the following situations:
  - If the electronic smart key does not work, the smart key system warning indicator on the instrument cluster flashes, and the message "Low key battery" is displayed, the key battery may have run out. Replace the electronic smart key battery as soon

as possible with reference to the operation procedure given in ***P218***.

- Except for causes mentioned above, the smart access and start system also fails to work normally under some conditions due to different service environments. See ***P58*** for details.

⚠ CAUTION

- If the vehicle cannot be started when the smart key is left stationary for more than two minutes, move the key and try starting again.

Starting the vehicle in emergencies

- Engage the parking brake firmly.
- Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.
- Shift to Park or Neutral.
- Switch the ignition off.
- The electronic smart key is in the vehicle.
- Press and hold the START/STOP button for more than 15 seconds to start the vehicle.

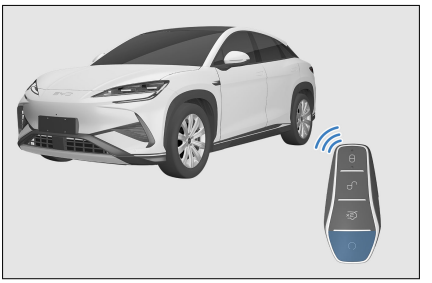
Remote Start

Before starting

- The power mode is "OFF".
- Shift into Park.
- The vehicle speed is below 5 km/h.

Starting the vehicle

1. Press and hold the remote start/stop button on the electronic smart key for two seconds to start the vehicle. After it is started, turn signals will flash three times.
2. If there is no valid operation within 10 minutes after remote start, the vehicle stops and powers off, and turn signals flash twice.



3. Press and hold the remote start/stop button on the electronic smart key for two seconds. The vehicle powers off, and turn signals flash twice.

Driving

Safety Check before Driving

Exterior

- Tires: check tire pressure and carefully inspect tires for any cut, damage, foreign material, anomaly, and excessive wear.
- Lug nuts: ensure all nuts are fitted and tightened.
- Lighting: make sure headlights, position lights, turn signals and all other lights are working normally. Check headlight intensity.

Interior

- Seat belts: Check whether seat belts can be properly fastened. Verify that seat belts are not worn or scratched.
- Instrument cluster: Particularly, verify that maintenance indicator, instrument cluster lighting, and defroster work properly.

- Brake pedal: Verify that there is enough space for the brake pedal to work.
- Low-voltage battery and cables: Check connectors for any corrosion or looseness and any cracks in the low-voltage battery housing.

In the engine compartment

- Spare fuses: Verify that spare fuses of all rated charges in the fuse box are available.
- Coolant level: Verify that coolant level is correct.

Check after starting

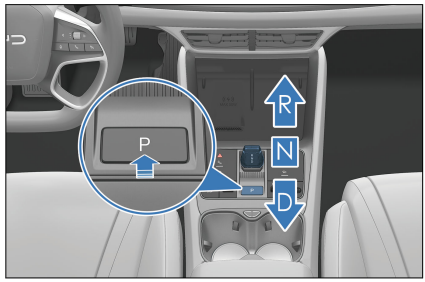
- Instrument cluster: Confirm that the maintenance indicator and the speedometer work normally.
- Brakes: In a safe area, drive the vehicle straight, hold the steering wheel tightly, decelerate and apply the brake. Verify that the vehicle maintains a straight direction.
- Other abnormalities: Check for loose parts, leaks, and unusual noises.

Preparations Before Driving

- Check your surroundings before getting into vehicle.
- Adjust seat position, seatback angle, cushion height, headrest height, and the steering wheel angle and height.
- Adjust interior rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- Close all doors.
- Fasten the seat belts.

Gear Shift Controls

- The gear position of the gear shift controls is marked on the lever.
- "P": Park, press this button to park the vehicle and the parking indicator will light up. Press the brake pedal to start the vehicle, you may shift from Park to another gear.



CAUTION

- To prevent damage, press the "P" button only after the vehicle has completely stopped.

- "R": Reverse, used only when the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- "N": Neutral, used for temporary stop. Under all circumstances, always shift to Park before the driver gets out.
- "D": Drive, shift to Drive gear to drive the vehicle normally.
- If the shift is successful, the lever returns to its middle position automatically after it is released.
- Turn the ignition on before shifting into Drive.
- Shifting out of Park or into a driving gear requires pressing the brake pedal. For details, see the prompt message on the instrument cluster.
- To prevent unintended vehicle movement, press the "P" button after the vehicle has stopped completely. The electronic parking brake (EPB) is automatically applied and the EPB indicator lights up.

WARNING

- When the motor is running and the vehicle is in Park or Drive gear, always stop the vehicle by stepping on the brake pedal, as there is still force transmitted from the actuator and the vehicle can travel slowly even in its idle condition.
- If you want to shift a gear while driving forward, do not step on the accelerator pedal to prevent accidents.
- Never shift to Reverse or press the "P" button while the vehicle is moving, in order to prevent accidents.
- Never coast downhill in Neutral or Park, even if the motor is not running.
- If the EPB indicator does not come on after shifting into Park, enable EPB in → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** on the infotainment touchscreen and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)

Be sure to engage the EPB every time before parking and leaving the vehicle.

Engaging EPB Manually

- When the vehicle is not in Park and EPB is released, press the brake pedal and engage electronic parking brake (EPB) on shortcut menu or infotainment touchscreen → → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**. Then, EPB applies appropriate parking force, and the indicator on the instrument cluster flashes and then is steady on, indicating that EPB is engaged. In addition, a text prompt "EPB activated" is displayed.

CAUTION

- When Ⓟ flashes, EPB is working. If the vehicle is on a slope, do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ is steady on. Otherwise the vehicle may move down.

Engaging EPB Automatically

Engaging EPB automatically with the ignition off

- When the ignition is switched off, EPB is engaged automatically and Ⓟ lights up on the instrument cluster.

Engaging EPB automatically when shifting into Park

- Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete stop and shift into Park and then EPB is engaged automatically. Do not release the brake pedal until the indicator Ⓟ on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB ON" message is displayed.
- Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete stop. If the driver's door is opened while the gear is in Drive or Reverse, the vehicle will be automatically shifted to Park and the EPB will be engaged. Do not release the brake pedal until the indicator Ⓟ on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB ON" message is displayed.

WARNING

- Refrain from excessively utilizing the automatic EPB engagement triggered by opening the driver's door, as it may result in the EPB not engaging properly or insufficient clamping force, leading to rollaway risks. For safety, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.

CAUTION

- Do not release the brake pedal early in the process, especially when the vehicle is stopped on a slope, to prevent it from rolling.
- Engaging EPB automatically with the ignition off is designed to improve the vehicle safety. Excessive reliance or frequent use of the function may lead to low SOC of low-voltage battery, resulting in the risk of vehicle slipping due to insufficient EPB clamping force. For safety, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.

Automatic EPB Release upon Vehicle Start

Releasing by shifting gear

- With the vehicle parked, start the vehicle, press and hold the brake pedal, and shift from Park or Neutral into a driving gear such as Drive or Reverse. EPB is released automatically, the indicator goes off, and the "EPB released" message is displayed.

CAUTION

- Be sure to always press and hold the brake pedal when shifting gears. Release the pedal only after the intended gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Within several seconds after the vehicle is started, the EPB system performs a power-on self-test. During this process, the EPB system does not respond to any operations.

Releasing by pressing the accelerator pedal

- When the vehicle has been started and in Drive or Reverse and the Electronic Parking Brake function is enabled on the infotainment system, press the accelerator pedal slowly to a certain degree. EPB is released automatically and (P) turns off with the message "EPB released" displayed.

Emergency Braking When Brake Pedal Fails

- If braking fails or is blocked, press and hold the "P" button for over 2 seconds for emergency braking.

WARNING

- As the EPB cannot go beyond the physical limit of road adhesion, activating the emergency brake function may result in vehicle drift, sideslip, or deflection when the vehicle passes through bends or dangerous/heavy-traffic road sections, or when the vehicle is driven under severe weather conditions. Be careful to avoid any accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- For safety considerations, refrain from using the "P" button for emergency braking in normal driving. If the brake pedal fails or is blocked, try to keep the vehicle under control before using the emergency braking function.

EPB Trailer Mode

The EPB trailer mode is designed for the situation when EPB is automatically engaged with the ignition off. When the vehicle needs to be powered off for towing, or when it malfunctions, you can switch on the trailer mode to exit parking with EPB.

- To enable the EPB trailer mode, go to infotainment touchscreen → 🚗 → **Service** → **Overhaul** → **EPB Trailer Mode**.
- EPB trailer mode can be activated when all the following conditions are met:
  - The vehicle is in Park.
  - Press the brake pedal.
  - The charging connector is not connected, and the vehicle is not being charged.

⚠ CAUTION

- When the activating conditions of EPB trailer mode are not met, a corresponding prompt message displays on the infotainment touchscreen.
- After activating the EPB trailer mode, the corresponding screen always displays on the infotainment touchscreen unless you tap to exit the EPB trailer mode.
- When the vehicle is on a slope and you need to enable the EPB trailer mode, do not release the brake pedal during the process to avoid vehicle slipping.
- If the vehicle fails and needs towing, see ***P220*** for recommended towing method.

- EPB trailer mode can exit when any of the following conditions is met:
  - Disable the EPB trailer mode on the infotainment touchscreen.
  - Press the "P" button.
  - Charging starts after the charging connector is connected.

EPB System Indicator

- When the vehicle is powered on, if the EPB is engaged, (P) is solid on on the instrument cluster.
- When the vehicle is powered off, if the EPB is engaged, (P) on the instrument cluster turns on and then turns off in several seconds.
- When the vehicle is powered on, the EPB performs a self-check. (!) turns on and then off in several seconds on the instrument cluster. If the indicator does not light up, there may be a fault in the EPB or braking system. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection immediately.

EPB Operating Sound

- EPB motor noises can be heard while the EPB is being engaged or released.

- If there is a burning smell or unusual noises after emergency braking is activated, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

WARNING

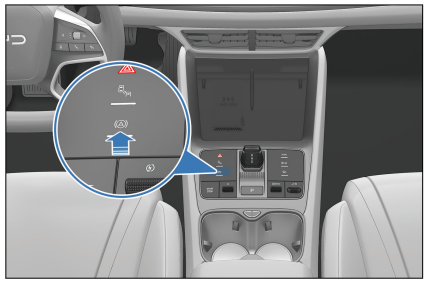
- To prevent the vehicle from moving, make sure the vehicle is in Park and EPB is engaged before leaving the vehicle.
- To prevent serious accidents, never allow any passenger in the vehicle to operate the EPB button when the vehicle is running.
- When the EPB is being engaged or released, the brake pedal must be pressed to prevent the vehicle from moving, and the subsequent locking of the gearshift that occurs because the EPB cannot provide a sufficient parking force.

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)

The automatic vehicle hold (AVH) is activated automatically when the moving vehicle needs to be stationary for longer periods of time, such as in traffic jams on a slope or waiting at traffic lights.

AVH standby

- When the ignition is on, press the AVH switch to enable the function. The AVH standby indicator Ⓐ is then displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Press the AVH switch again to disable AVH.



AVH activated

- When the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ is solid on, press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero) to activate AVH. At this time, the vehicle is in AVH state with Ⓐ displayed on the instrument cluster.

CAUTION

- For AVH to be activated, all of the follow conditions must be met:
  - The driver's seat belt is fastened and the doors are closed.
  - Intelligent power braking system and electronic park brake (EPB) systems are normal.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal, shifting into Park, powering off the vehicle, or engaging the EPB manually can make AVH exit to the standby status.
- The AVH is off by factory default.
- AVH has a memory function that retains its previous state when the vehicle is restarted.

AVH running

- The AVH runs normally when it is activated, brake lights and the high-mount brake light are on, and the AVH indicator Ⓐ is solid on on the instrument cluster.

- The AVH exits to the standby mode after the vehicle stops for 10 minutes, with the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ on and the vehicle in Park.
  - To activate AVH function, shift into Drive to enable the vehicle to move normally, and then press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero).

AVH exits

- When the AVH function runs normally, the following actions make AVH exit and shift the vehicle from Drive to Park automatically:
  - Opening the driver's door.
  - Unlocking the driver's seat belt.
  - Stopping the vehicle in Drive with EPB activated.
  - Pressing the AVH switch to disable AVH when releasing the brake pedal.

AVH suppressed

- Shift into Reverse and then AVH enters the slow-moving condition. When the vehicle is reversing (in Reverse) or shifts from Reverse into Drive to travel at a low speed, AVH cannot be activated but stays on standby to facilitate low-speed vehicle motion.
- To exit slow-moving mode, press the AVH switch or drive at a speed above 10 km/h. The AVH function is on standby and can be activated normally.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle is being transported (for example, by trailer, ship, or train), do not use AVH for parking. Shift into Park, apply the EPB, turn off the power, and lock the vehicle to prevent unintended movement caused by

CAUTION

vibration or insufficient braking force.

Driving Precautions

- Slow down when driving against strong winds.
- Drive slowly and carefully along gravel roads. To prevent tire damage, do not drive over sharp-edged obstacles. Or it will severely damage the tires.
- Slow down on bumpy or uneven roads, or the shock would damage the tires.
- Avoid driving through flooded areas as much as possible.
- Drive carefully on slippery roads, such as roads covered in ice, snow or sand, or surfaces such as wet ceramic tiles or epoxy resin. Avoid parking on slopes to prevent vehicle sliding.

WARNING

- The driver shall ensure the riding safety of all passengers in the vehicle, guide them to correctly use vehicle features, and prevent children and other passengers operating control switches such as window switches in a wrong way.

REMINDER

- The high-voltage battery is located in the vehicle's chassis. Make sure to avoid bumping when driving.
- Before driving, make sure that EPB is fully released and that the EPB indicator light is off.

REMINDER

- Do not leave the vehicle when the drive motor is running.
- Do not rest your feet on the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously for a long time during driving to prevent overheating, wear, or waste of electric energy.
- Slow down when driving down steep slopes, and avoid braking too frequently to prevent disc overheating, which affects brake performance.
- Be careful when accelerating or braking on slippery roads. Quick acceleration or sudden braking will cause the vehicle to skid or deviate.
- Make sure no occupant sticks their head or hands outside the vehicle, specially when it comes to children.
- Large amounts of water entering the engine compartment can cause damage to the power system and electrical components.

Winter Driving Precautions

- Make sure the coolant is freeze-proof.
  - Use the same type of coolant as the original model. Fill up the coolant according to the ambient temperature.
  - Improper coolant damages the cooling system.
- Check the condition of the low-voltage battery and the cables.
  - The low-voltage battery's capacity is lower in cold weather, so it must be fully charged when winter comes.
- Avoid door frost.
  - Spray some deicing agent or glycerin in the lock hole to prevent freezing.
- Use anti-freeze washer fluid.
  - These can be purchased in the BYD authorized dealers or service providers and most auto parts stores.
  - The water and anti-freeze ratio in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

CAUTION

- Use special washer fluid to prevent paint damage.

- Prevent ice and snow from going under the fender liner.
  - Ice or snow accumulating under the fender liners makes steering difficult. When driving in cold weather, stop from time to time and check for snow and ice under the fender liners.
- It is recommended to have emergency tools for different road conditions in the vehicle.
  - It is advisable to have snow chains, window scraper, bags of sand and salt, flashing signal, a shovel and connecting cables in the vehicle.
- Snow chains are only for emergencies or areas where they are permitted by laws.
- Snow chains should be installed on rear wheels. Be careful when driving the vehicle installed with snow chains on snow-covered roads. Some snow chains may damage the tires, wheels, suspension, or vehicle body. It is recommended to use thin snow chains with a thickness or diameter no greater

than 10 mm to ensure adequate clearance between the tires and other components inside the wheel well.

- Read the component assembly drawings and other instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer carefully.
- Before purchasing and installing snow chains, consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider where your vehicle was purchased.
- In order to minimize wear of tires and snow chains, do not travel with snow chains on roads without snow.

REMINDER

- Driving speed must not exceed 30 km/h or the speed limit specified by the snow chain manufacturer.
- Drive carefully, and pay attention to bumps, potholes, and sharp turns that can cause the vehicle to bounce.
- For vehicles with snow chains, avoid sharp turns or braking with locked wheels, and slow down the vehicle before entering a curve to avoid accidents due to loss of control.
- Install snow chains symmetrically on both sides and removed them immediately after the vehicle is leaving snowy or muddy roads.
- If abnormal noise is heard from the snow chain, it indicates that the chain may contact vehicle components such as suspension, body or brake lines. In this case, stop the vehicle immediately for inspection.
- Install snow chains after turning off the vehicle and engaging the parking brake firmly. Do not

REMINDER

Install snow chains when the tire pressure is insufficient

- When installing the snow chain, park the vehicle on a flat surface away from traffic, turn on the hazard warning lights, and place a warning triangle at the rear of the vehicle.

Winter Tires

- Winter tires provide better traction on snowy roads. The special rubber mixture and tread pattern makes the tires less affected by low temperatures and delivers excellent braking performance to improve driving safety.

Usage tips

- It is recommended to use winter tires in snow or ice conditions or at temperatures below 7°C. When temperatures rise to above 7°C, install summer or all-season tires instead for driving safety and better performance.
- Winter tires must be the same size, load index, and speed rating as those originally provided by BYD.
- Winter tires must have adequate tread depth. Tires with a tread depth less than 4 mm do not perform well in winter conditions.
- Winter or summer tires are designed for specific acceleration conditions. Use them in the corresponding seasons to avoid poor traction or braking performance.
- Do not exceed the speed rating of winter tires, which is relatively low.
- After installing winter tires, inflate them to the design pressures.

Driver Assistance

Driver Assistance System Introduction

- The functions of the driver assistance system are divided into two categories: driving assist and safety assist.
  - Driving assist provides adaptive cruise control (ACC) and intelligent cruise control (ICC) to support the driver during vehicle operation.
  - Safety assist provides front, side, and rear safety assistance functions to help the driver maintain safe driving.

WARNING

- Before using the driver assistance system, the driver should carefully read, understand, and comply with the relevant agreements and accompanying documents. The driver should fully understand the system-related information, including but not limited to: the user guide, general system limitations, descriptions of each function, applicable scenarios, operating methods, and precautions. Strict compliance with the operating instructions is required; otherwise, accidents, property damage, or personal injury may occur. Unless otherwise required by applicable laws and regulations, BYD assumes no liability for property damage, personal injury, or other consequences caused by the driver's non-compliance with this manual, relevant agreements, or accompanying documents.

WARNING

- The system is designed to assist the driver, not to replace their focused attention or accurate judgment. When using the system, the driver must comply with local traffic laws and regulations, always keep their hands on the steering wheel, remain alert, and continuously monitor the surroundings for potential hazards. The driver must intervene or take control of the vehicle whenever necessary to ensure safe driving. Failure to do so may result in accidents, property damage, or personal injury.
- The terms and expressions related to vehicle control in this manual are intended to provide clear and concise instructions during system operation. During system operation, the driver remains the sole operator of the vehicle and must continuously monitor the vehicle status, system operation, surrounding environment, and relevant targets. In the event of system limitations or unexpected scenarios, immediate manual intervention and control are mandatory to ensure driving safety. Otherwise, accidents, property damage, or personal injury may occur.
- The driver shall use the driver assistance system in accordance with local laws and regulations, and shall not add functions, Apps, or tools to the system for any improper or illegal acts, nor shall they illegally collect and use personal information and geographic data through the system. BYD bear no responsibility for any illegal activities resulting

WARNING

from misuse, improper use, or unauthorized modification of the system functions or services. BYD reserves the right to temporarily disable system functions or even terminate services to the user. Additionally, BYD reserves the right to retain data related to the user's illegal activities for submission to authorized agencies in accordance with legal procedures.

CAUTION

- The driver assistance system is only designed to assist the driver in driving, not an automatic or unmanned driving system. Although the system provides a certain level of assistance, it cannot address all scenarios that may arise due to traffic, road conditions, visibility, adverse weather, or other environmental changes during driving. Therefore, the driver remains fully responsible for all driving decisions and must ensure compliance with local traffic laws and regulations at all times.

Sensors of the Driver Assistance System

- The vehicle is equipped with multiple sensors, including mmWave radars and cameras.

Sensor Cleaning and Maintenance

- Ensure that all radars and cameras are clean and the front windshield is free of dirt, frost, or fog. Dirt, obstructions, or attachments on the radar or camera surface, or dirt, frost, or fog on the windshield may affect system performance.
- When a radar or camera is blocked or dirty, the instrument or infotainment touchscreen may display a message prompt. Clean the sensors as instructed. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider when necessary.

Common conditions causing radar or camera occlusion and recommended actions:

- If the radar or camera lens housing is covered with ice or frost, melt it using warm water or a antifreeze-containing cleaning solution. Wipe the surface dry with a clean optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible residue remains.
- If dust, mud spots, bird droppings, or similar contaminants adhere to the sensor surface, rinse with running water or windshield-specific cleaner until the dirt softens or detaches. Afterward, wipe the surface dry with a clean optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible residue remains.
- If moisture or condensation forms on the sensor surface, wipe it clean with a dry optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible water stains remain.
- When driving in environments with poor lighting or obstructions, such as single-sided overpasses, tunnels, deserts, grasslands, or snowy areas, drive out of these areas as soon as possible. Sensor faults will clear automatically with no further action required.

Cleaning and maintenance tips

- When the windshield fogs or is likely to fog, activate the defogging function.

- Using a neutral cleaner (such as soap water) to clean stains on the radar surface is recommended. After cleaning, rinse the radar housing with clean water and wipe it dry with a lint-free cloth.
- Do not apply films, wax, non-OEM paint, vehicle wraps, or coatings to the radar area, as these may impair radar sensing performance.
- Do not use a cleaning brush, as sand or debris may scratch the lens housing or casing.
- Do not use hot water to remove ice or snow from the lens housing, as it may cause cracking.
- Do not wipe the lens housing forcefully to avoid damaging the optical coating.
- Do not use metal or hard objects to scrape the contaminants, ice, or snow on the lens housing and casing to avoid damage.
- Avoid spraying radars or cameras directly with high-pressure water.
- The mmWave radars are installed in the front and rear bumpers. Keep the bumpers clean and avoid repainting, adding body kits, or installing metal or alloy (including electroplated) accessories, as they may affect radar performance.

Sensor Limitations

- Limitations of radar and camera include but are not limited to:
  - Radars and cameras may have detection blind spots.
  - Radars and cameras may detect falsely such as misjudge distance or speed, or detect objects that are not present.
  - Radars and cameras may miss a target, such as partially or completely failing to identify vehicles, pedestrians, animals, or other obstacles.
- Many factors can affect sensor performance, leading to false or missed detections. See ***P122***

WARNING

- It is prohibited to use strong alkalis, strong acids, ammonia cleaners, bleach, cement cleaners, tar removers, glue removers, polishing agents, or paint removers on radar and camera lens housings and casings.
- Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider if a radar or camera needs to be replaced. Do not install parts not approved by BYD or make unapproved modifications.
- If the front windshield, fender, side mirror, bumper or trunk lid need to be replaced, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to properly handle radars and cameras.
- If the area where a sensor is installed is damaged or impacted, causing misalignment or damage, the system may not operate properly. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to have it inspected promptly.
- After a radar or camera is replaced, perform calibration promptly by a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Improper calibration may affect system functionality.
- Failure to follow these requirements may impair driving safety, resulting in accidents,

WARNING

property damage, or personal injury.

General Limitations of the Driver Assistance System

Driver assistance features utilize multi-sensor fusion algorithms. Various factors can impair their performance. These include but are not limited to device issues (including improper operations), environment of use (such as weather and road conditions), and influence of vehicles around and other road users.

Device issues (including user-related reasons)

- The mmWave radars or cameras are not yet calibrated or damaged or covered, for example, by ice, water, frost, mud, or dust.
- There are strongly reflective objects around, such as highway traffic signs, metallic fences, or standing water on the road.
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration and checkup of the system in any of the following situations:
  - The front camera or front windshield has been removed.
  - Wheel alignment has been carried out.
  - Scrapes, collisions, or other impacts have led to sensor or vehicle structural error, especially sensor displacement due to deformation or damage of the bumper, front windshield, side mirrors, body panels (for example, fenders and trunk lid), frame, or other components.
- A trailer hitch or loaded objects protrude from the vehicle.
- Interference or obstruction is caused by non-standard accessories installed at the rear such as bike racks.
- Obstructions is caused by excessive paint (increased paint thickness) or adhesive products (such as tape, stickers, or car covers).
- Do not use steering wheel cover on vehicles equipped with capacitive sensors as it may cause malfunctions.
- System performance may be reduced in some cases, including but not limited to the following:
  - The brake pads are excessively worn or the braking system malfunctions.
  - Tires are improperly inflated or worn out.
  - Unqualified tires are installed.
  - Snow chains are installed.
  - A small spare tire or tire repair kit are used.
  - The vehicle is heavily loaded.

Environment of use

- Radars may experience temporary malfunctions from detection limitations if the vehicle is driven for an extended period under special road conditions such as circular parking garages or tunnels. The function will resume once the vehicle leaves such conditions.
- Entering or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection, causing late or insufficient braking.
- On sharp curves, such as winding roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of sensor detection for seconds, causing the system to accelerate the vehicle unexpectedly.

- The system may not be able to identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, traffic queue ends, toll booths, motorcycles, bicycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires the driver to beware of the surroundings.
- The system cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as towing or snow mode.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, e-bicycle, or motorcycle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
- The vehicle is operating in extreme weather, such as heavy rain, snow, fog, or smog, or on icy and slippery curves.
- Visibility is poor due to heavy smoke, splashing water, dust, or exhaust emissions from nearby vehicles.
- Lane markings are worn, blocked, covered, missing, overlapping, or temporarily changed due to construction.
- The vehicle is in intense light (for example, oncoming headlights or direct sunlight) or low-light conditions (for example, dawn, dusk, or nighttime).
- The vehicle experiences extreme lighting contrast, for example, at the tunnel entrance or exit.
- The environment is extremely hot or cold.
- Weight and width limit signs not meeting national standards may be misidentified as speed limit signs.
- Unclear, distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked, or covered speed limit signs may not be recognized correctly.
- The vehicle is in complex road conditions, such as steep slopes, sharp curves, continuous curves, narrow winding roads, narrow lanes, off-road roads, rough roads, roads with grooves or potholes (for example manholes), roads with a drop-off or cliff on one side, raised road shoulders, excessively wide lanes, construction zones (for example areas with traffic cones), or areas involving on-ramps, off-ramps, intersections, or toll gates.
- The vehicle is in poor road conditions, such as slippery or soft surfaces (such as water accumulation, ice, snow accumulation, muddy roads, gravel roads, or sandy roads), blurred lane markings, or damaged road signs.

Vehicles around and other road users

- Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
- Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
- Close-proximity non-motorized vehicles (including but not limited to two-wheelers, three-wheelers, bicycles, motorcycles, trolleys, strollers, and shopping carts), animals, and pedestrians (especially children).
- Upturned vehicles, vehicles in extremely abnormal sizes, and irregularly shaped vehicles, such as engineering vehicles, flatbed trucks, road maintenance vehicles, and vehicles carrying reinforced concrete pipes or other external cargo.
- Irregularly shaped obstacles nearby, such as transparent stools, chairs, tables, traffic barriers, and traffic cones, and other obstacles difficult for the system to identify.

- Vehicles with large areas of monotonous background colors.
- Complex traffic where vehicles, pedestrians, cyclists, animals, or other obstacles appear suddenly and approach rapidly, or areas involving ramps, intersections, or toll stations.

WARNING

- If the sensors are displaced or damaged after scrapes or collisions (including minor impacts), do not use driver assistance features. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.
- For safety, do not use driver assistance features in bad weather or in poor lighting conditions.
- For safety, do not deliberately test driver assistance features, for example, waiting for system reaction to emergencies without manual intervention.
- Read carefully all feature instructions to avoid unintended deactivation or danger incurred by incorrect operations. For example, with AEB activated, pressing the accelerator pedal forcefully may override emergency braking.
- Due to system limitations, the driver assistance system may give improper warnings or interventions while monitoring the surroundings. It may also raise false alarms as a result of operation misinterpretation. Stay alert.
- Due to system limitations, the system may not accurately detect or respond to sudden changes in the surroundings. The driver must stay alert and intervene

WARNING

or take control of the vehicle when necessary (for example, by decelerating, braking, or steering). Failure to observe precautions above could result in accidents or personal injuries.

Driving Assist

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

- The adaptive cruise control (ACC) system, an extension of the traditional cruise control, uses front mmWave radars or a multi-purpose camera to detect the relative distance and speed of the vehicle ahead, so as to control vehicle speed accordingly based on the set following distance and target cruise speed. When there are no vehicles ahead, the vehicle maintains the set target cruise speed. If a vehicle is detected ahead, ACC adjusts the vehicle speed according to the set following distance.

CAUTION

- ACC is enabled by default and cannot be manually disabled. The driver can activate ACC using the buttons on the steering wheel. See "Activation methods" for details.
- ACC only serves to assist in cruise control. The driver must remain actively engaged with steering to ensure correct vehicle direction.

ACC status

- ACC on: If ACC activation activation are met, the driver can activate ACC using the steering wheel button. If conditions are not met and the driver attempts activation, the instrument cluster

will display a "Function Unavailable" message.

- ACC activated: The system maintains the set target cruise speed or automatically adjusts the distance to the vehicle ahead. Pressing the accelerator pedal temporarily overrides ACC control, which will resume once the pedal is released.
- ACC failure: ACC is not available. If the driver attempts activation, the instrument cluster will display a "Function Unavailable" message.
- Icons are for reference only; actual display may vary.

Function Status	Indicator	Display Status	Definition
ACC on		Indicator on	ACC has been turned on but not activated yet in the current power cycle.
ACC on		Indicator on	ACC has been turned on, can be activated, and had already been activated in the current power cycle. The last set cruise speed is displayed in the indicator icon.
ACC activated		Indicator on	ACC is active. The set cruise speed is displayed in the indicator icon.
ACC failure		Indicator on	ACC is not available because it has failed.

How to Use

Activation conditions

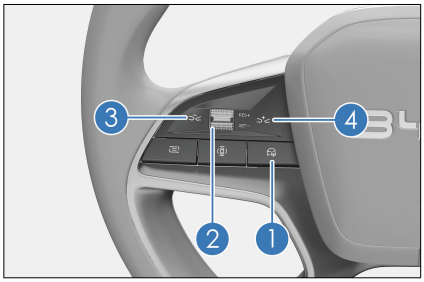
- EPB is released.
- The vehicle is in Drive.
- The vehicle is stationary without rolling backwards.
- All doors, the trunk, and the hood are closed.
- The driver seat belt is fastened.
- The electronic stability control (ESC) system is activated.
- The vehicle speed is not greater than 150 km/h.
- If the vehicle is stationary and the brake pedal is pressed or EPB is engaged, ACC can be activated.
- If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not pressed, ACC can be activated.
- There is no vehicle network communication failure prompt on the instrument cluster.
- The automatic emergency braking (AEB) function is not activated.

CAUTION

- ACC is suitable for highways and well-maintained roads, rather than complex urban or mountain roads.

Activation methods

- Within the same ignition cycle, if ACC has not been activated, press button ① to activate it. If ACC has already been activated, it can also be reactivated by pushing the rocker switch ② upward.



- When activating the function via button ①, the system sets the current speed as the target cruise speed (minimum 30 km/h). When activating via rocker switch ②, the target cruise speed is set to the last set speed before exiting ACC.

WARNING

- ACC cannot automatically adjust speed based on road or traffic conditions. To ensure safe driving, the driver must set and adjust the target speed according to local regulations and road conditions.

Setting the target cruise speed

- When ACC is active, move the rocker switch ② up or down to set target cruise speed between 30–150 km/h.
  - Briefly pushing ② up/down increases/decreases the target cruise speed by 5 km/h each time.
  - Pushing and holding ② up/down increases/decreases the speed by 1 km/h successively.

WARNING

- ACC may not immediately reduce the speed to the desired value. Do not over-rely on ACC to reduce the speed.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Setting following distance

- Press ③ or ④ to decrease or increase the following distance from the vehicle ahead. Across all levels, the faster the vehicle, the greater the distance.
- ACC increases or decreases the time-based following distance from level 1 to 4. The default level is 3.

Cruise control

- When no front vehicle obstructing your vehicle travel is detected, ACC helps maintain the set speed.

Following

- When a front vehicle obstructing your vehicle travel is detected, ACC helps maintain a safe distance to follow and speed up, slow down, brake, and start the vehicle accordingly.
- On the instrument cluster, the followed vehicle ahead is highlighted in blue. The following distance varies with the vehicle speed and the following distance level (see "Setting following distance").
- When active, ACC helps adjust the following speed and target when the target cuts out or another vehicle

cuts in and switches to cruise control (without distance control) if no new following target appears.

Follow-to-stop/start

- Under normal driving conditions, ACC enables the vehicle to follow the vehicle ahead to start or stop:
  - If the vehicle ahead stops for a short time, ACC resumes following automatically when the lead vehicle starts moving.
  - If the vehicle ahead stops for a long time, depress the accelerator pedal or move rocker switch ② upward to start the vehicle.
  - If the stop is excessively long, ACC exits and EPB is engaged. In that case, you will have to release EPB and depress the brake pedal to reactivate ACC.

ACC acceleration

- ACC acceleration depends on the current driving mode:
  - In Sport mode, acceleration is faster.
  - In Normal mode, acceleration is moderate.
  - In Eco mode, acceleration is gentle.

WARNING

- Be a safe and responsible driver. Set the target speed and following distance according to local regulations and conditions and adjust in a timely manner to changes.
- ACC is unable to deal with oncoming traffic.
- ACC may not identify very close vehicles or pedestrian.

WARNING

- On curves, the vehicle may follow a wrong target, leading to unintended traveling speed or direction. You must stay focused and take control of the vehicle in a timely manner whenever noticing such situations.
- To prevent collisions, never be over-reliant on ACC adjustment of speed and following distance to keep a safe distance from the front vehicle. The driver is responsible for determining and maintaining a safe following distance.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Manual acceleration with ACC active

- To enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** → **Adjust Cruise Speed by Accelerator**. The function is disabled by default.
- You can accelerate manually by pressing the accelerator pedal, which overrides ACC braking.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal increases current speed rapidly, and releasing the pedal raises the target cruise speed.
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed until the real-time vehicle speed exceeds the target cruise speed, the target cruise speed will be reset to

the real-time speed when the pedal is released.

- If the target cruise speed is greater than 80 km/h, the setting value of cruise speed will not be updated when the accelerator pedal is released.
- If the target cruise speed is below 80 km/h and the real-time speed is over 80 km/h after acceleration, the cruise speed is set to 80km/h when the accelerator pedal is released.
- If the target cruise speed is below 80 km/h and the real-time speed after acceleration is less than 80 km/h, the real-time speed is set as the cruise speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

- If rocker switch ② is pulled down while accelerating, the current speed will be reset as the target cruise speed.

Exiting ACC

- When ICC is disabled on the infotainment touchscreen, ACC can be deactivated by pressing button ① or the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving. When the vehicle is stationary, ACC can only be deactivated by pressing button ①.
- When ICC is enabled on the infotainment touchscreen, ACC can be deactivated by pressing the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving.

Inside overtaking prevention

- The inside overtaking prevention function is only effective when ACC/ICC is enabled and the vehicle speed is above 90 km/h.
- To enable or disable this function on the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** → **Inside Overtaking Prevention**. The function is disabled by default.
- When switched on, this function slows the vehicle down to avoid overtaking adjacent fast-lane vehicles.

Speed adjustment on curve

- The speed adjustment on curve function works only with ACC/ICC active.
- To enable or disable this function on the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** → **Speed Adjustment on Curve**. The function is disabled by default.
- With this function switched on and ACC/ICC active, the vehicle decelerates as appropriate for the curvature before entering a curve for driving safety and comfort.

System Limitations

- Exterior ACC sensors
  - The front mmWave radars and cameras are installed at the front of the vehicle. Blockage of their detection area can compromise system performance. In particular, if the sensor is covered completely, ACC exits and notify the driver via the instrument cluster. System function will recover after blockage is removed and the vehicle is restarted or runs on normal roads for a while.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, e-bicycle, or motorcycle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
  - The front mmWave radars may experience temporary malfunctions from detection limitations if the vehicle is driven for an extended

period under special road conditions such as circular parking garages or tunnels. The function will resume once the vehicle leaves such conditions.

- The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- Metal objects, such as rail or metal plates used in road construction, may interfere with front mmWave radars, causing it malfunction.
- Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
- Performance of front mmWave radars and cameras may be affected by vibration or collision. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

- Entering or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection, causing the ACC vehicle to brake late or fail to brake as expected.
- On sharp curves, such as winding roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of sensor detection for seconds, causing the system to accelerate the vehicle unexpectedly.

WARNING

- ACC cannot deal with sharp, consecutive, and other complex curves, so you need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.

- Traffic flow and surroundings must be heeded for setting and adjusting the following distance. Even when ACC is properly set, the driver must be able to stop the vehicle at any time.
- The ACC system may not be able to identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, motorcycles, bicycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires the driver to beware of the surroundings.
- The ACC system is capable of limited braking instead of emergency braking.

WARNING

- ACC is not a collision warning or avoidance system and therefore cannot replace collision prevention warning, collision prevention brake, or other active safety assist features, which we strongly advise you to keep switched on (see "Safety Assist" for details).
- ACC cannot react to poles, bollards, and other obstacles, so you need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.
- Never be over-reliant on ACC for full deceleration and collision prevention. You need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and brake in a timely manner if necessary.
- The vehicle may not be able to avoid front targets that pose a collision risk, especially when the target is stationary or when the vehicle is traveling at a high speed.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in

WARNING

an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

- ACC cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as towing or snow mode.
- ACC and its related features may operate improperly or deactivate in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Vehicle issues (including but not limited to improper operations):
    - The vehicle speed is greater than 155 km/h.
    - Any door, the hood, or the trunk lid is open or faulty.
    - Tire pressure is abnormal.
    - Airbags are abnormal.
    - The vehicle is in any of the following states: not in Drive, in the process of braking, hill descent control/hill hold control/ traction control system activated, involved in a collision, ignition off.
    - The vehicle's chassis, braking system, traction control system, or electronic stability system malfunctions or is in need of servicing.
    - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
    - The driver assistance system malfunctions or is in need of servicing.
  - Environment of use (including but not limited to weather, visibility, road conditions):
    - Poor visibility settings such as nighttime, rainy, snowy, or foggy days, dusty environments, lack of lighting, low-light conditions, backlighting, and glare
    - Road openings, intersections, narrow roads, and steep slopes
    - Mountain roads and rural roads
    - Waterlogged, icy, and snow-covered sections
    - Sharp curves, serpentine curves, switchback roads, and other high-curvature turns
    - Unpaved roads such as muddy roads, gravel roads, and off-road trails
    - Curbs and other low-profile, static, or nearby obstacles
  - Vehicles around and other road users (including but not limited to):
    - Congested intersections
    - Pedestrians and vehicles weaving through the intersection
    - Sudden appearance of pedestrians, cyclists, or animals from blind spots
    - Sudden braking of the vehicle ahead
    - Adjacent large vehicle merging into your lane
    - Pedestrians or other vehicles cutting in, forcing their way through traffic, merging at a sharp angle, or traveling in the wrong direction
    - Stationary vehicles, upturned vehicles, or irregularly shaped vehicles, such as engineering vehicles, flatbed trucks, road maintenance vehicles, and vehicles carrying reinforced concrete pipes or other external cargo

- Front vehicle or adjacent front vehicle with any door open or things falling off

- Other issues:
  - Including but not limited to situations listed under General System Limitations

WARNING

- ACC is only a driver assistance feature, and cautions here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety and must always mind surrounding traffic.
- Use ACC based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- ACC cannot be activated with ESC off.
- ACC is suitable for highways and well-maintained roads, rather than complex urban or mountain roads.
- It is the driver's responsibility to keep distance from the vehicle ahead. Set a time-based following distance compliant with the minimum requirement for the local driving environment.
- Pressing the accelerator or brake pedal while ACC is active allows you to take over the vehicle. Therefore, take caution to keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.
- ACC may have no or a delayed responses to a vehicle ahead that

CAUTION

brakes suddenly, which may result in late braking.

- In some cases, such as when the preceding vehicle is moving too slowly, when you change lanes too quickly, or when the following distance is too short, the system may not have sufficient time to reduce the speed or issue warnings. In such cases, the driver must respond appropriately and promptly.
- When active with the vehicle motionless, ACC identifies any stationary obstacle ahead as the target and keeps the vehicle still to ensure a safe startup and prevent collision. However, this function cannot detect all obstacles, so the driver must be alert.
- A short distance from an adjacent lane (or a vehicle on an adjacent lane that is too close to the ACC vehicle's lane) may trigger ACC to brake.
- Vehicles coming into the ACC vehicle's lane and entering the detection range of the front cameras are identified as target vehicles, which may lead to hard or late braking.
- Keep control of the vehicle if ACC cannot target the vehicle ahead (no highlighted target on the instrument cluster).
- When coming to a stop behind a vehicle, in rare cases the system may fail to recognize the rear end of the preceding vehicle (for example, the rear axle of a high-chassis truck or a rear bumper). In such cases, the system may

CAUTION

not maintain a proper following distance, so the driver must stay alert and be ready to brake.

- Modifying the vehicle structure, such as lowering the chassis, may affect the ACC system.
- Do not use ACC when visibility is poor, or when driving on slopes, winding roads, or wet roads (covered in ice/snow or flooded).
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the front cameras in any of the following situations:
  - The front camera or front windshield has been removed.
  - Wheel alignment has been carried out.
  - The vehicle has experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or the instrument cluster has prompted an system error.

Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)

- Intelligent cruise control (ICC) assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the current lane at speeds between 0 and 150 km/h. It is primarily intended for use on roads with clear lane markings and in good driving conditions.
- ICC uses sensors such as radars and cameras to monitor the road ahead. Based on the detected environment, it assists the driver in controlling the steering and speed, building upon ACC functionality to keep the vehicle in its current lane.
- ICC only assists in keeping the vehicle within the current lane; it does not provide route guidance. When using ICC, you must be prepared to take immediate corrective actions to ensure safe driving. Always keep both hands on the steering wheel, take control when route adjustments are required, and pay attention to instrument cluster and audio alerts. If the driver's hands remain off the steering wheel for a certain time, a driver disengagement alert will be triggered.

ICC indicator

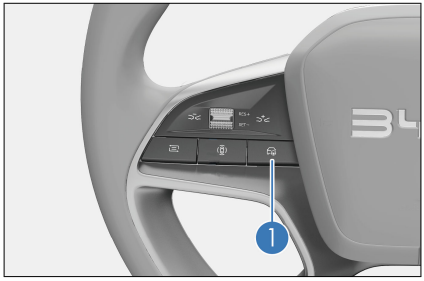
- Icons are for reference only; actual display may vary.

Indicator	Display Status	Definition
	Indicator on	ICC available but not activated
	Indicator on	ICC activated and operating
	Indicator on	ICC unavailable due to fault

How to Use

Activating ICC

- ICC is available for activation when displays on the instrument cluster.
  - To enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist**. When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- Press button ① to activate ICC. If the activation conditions are not met (for example, no lane markings are detected), ACC will be activated first. Once the conditions are met, ICC will switch on automatically.



- displays on the instrument cluster when ICC is successfully activated. The target speed will be shown in .

Cruise control

- ICC assists the driver in keeping the vehicle centered in the lane, while supporting all ACC functions such as constant-speed cruise, following, and the adjustment of target speed and time-based following distance.

WARNING

- Be a safe and responsible driver. Set the target speed and following distance according to local regulations and conditions and adjust in a timely manner to changes.
- ICC cannot detect all potential hazards, so the driver must stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary. Always keep both hands on the steering wheel and remain aware of the surroundings, ready to take prompt control of the vehicle and take corrective measures.
- Do not over-rely on ICC to keep the vehicle in the lane. In situations such as curves, the vehicle may drift towards or across lane markings. The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct lane position.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary.

Driver disengagement alert

- If the driver's hands remain off the steering wheel for a certain time when ICC is active, a driver disengagement alert will be triggered.
- After the third-level disengagement alert is triggered, the vehicle will automatically exit ICC, decelerate to a stop within the lane, and activate the hazard warning lights.
- The following actions can interrupt the automatic stop:
  - Turning off the hazard lights or activating a turn signal
  - Pressing the accelerator pedal while turning the steering wheel
  - Canceling ICC using the steering wheel control button

- Shifting to Park

- If the third-level disengagement alert is triggered three times within the same power cycle, ICC will be disabled. The function can be reactivated only after the vehicle is turned off and back on again.

Exiting ICC

- Press the button ① or brake pedal to exit if the vehicle is moving.
- Press the button ① to exit if the vehicle is stationary.

WARNING

- The vehicle may not stabilize immediately when ICC is just activated. The driver must keep both hands on the steering wheel, stay aware of driving conditions, and be ready to take control at any time.
- Ensure surrounding conditions are safe before activating ICC. Avoid over-reliance on the system.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary.
- ICC can be affected by weather conditions, lighting, and lane marking visibility. Performance degrades significantly in backlight, glare, strong light, on snow-covered roads or roads with heavily worn lane markings.
- Do not use the ICC on winding roads, icy or slippery curves, or under poor weather conditions such as dense fog, heavy rain, or snow, which may obstruct the forward camera's view.

CAUTION

- Activate ICC only after the vehicle is stable (steering wheel centered, vehicle aligned and centered in lane, and no sharp turns).
- ICC activation may fail at intersections. Try activating the system after passing the intersection and entering a stable lane.

Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)

- When the traffic sign recognition (TSR) system detects that the speed limit is inconsistent with the adaptive cruise control (ACC) target cruise speed, you are required to confirm whether to cruise at the speed limit. Press the SET- or RES + button on the steering wheel to adjust the target cruise speed to the speed limit value.
- When the system detects traffic signs such as roundabouts or intersections, the system will prompt whether to adjust the ACC target cruise speed accordingly.
- The system's operating speed range is 60–150 km/h.

Function Settings

- To enable or disable ISLC on the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
  - This function is disabled by factory default.
  - When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
  - When TSR is disabled, ISLC also ceases to function.
  - With TSR on, ISLC can be enabled or disabled depending on your needs.

CAUTION

- ISLC integrates ACC and TSR. Therefore, carefully read and follow the function precautions and system limitations of ACC and TSR before using ISLC.

Forward Safety Assist

Forward Collision Warning (FCW)

- Forward collision warning (FCW) uses the front mmWave radar or cameras to detect vehicles, pedestrians, and cyclists in front. When detecting a risk of collision, the system alerts audibly and visually to reduce or avoid the risk of collision.

Safe distance warning

- At 65–150 km/h, the system monitors the environment ahead in real-time. The safe distance warning is triggered if a short following distance is detected to have been kept for a long time.
- The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, and a message is displayed to alert the driver.

Pre-warning

- At 15-150 km/h, pre-warning is given in response to a risk of collision with the target ahead. In that case, immediately take appropriate actions to ensure a safe following distance.
- This pre-warning is given in the form of an indicator and a textual braking prompt on the instrument cluster and a beep.

Emergency warning

- If the vehicle runs at about 15–150 km/h, if the driver does not respond appropriately after the pre-warning and the collision risk increases, the system issues an emergency warning. In that case, immediately take appropriate actions to ensure a safe following distance.
- This emergency warning is given in the form of an indicator and a textual braking prompt on the instrument cluster, a beep, and a brief braking reminder.

WARNING

- FCW is an assistance feature and its warning timing may be affected by many factors, including vehicle speed, sensor accuracy, target type, distance to the target, and system latency. As a result, warnings may be delayed, missed, or triggered falsely. FCW can not replace your judgment and operation.

Function Settings

- To configure FCW settings on the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- Several options are provided:
  - OFF: FCW is switched off.
  - Late: FCW is enabled and issues late warnings.
  - Moderate: FCW is enabled and issues moderately timed warnings.
  - Early: FCW is enabled and issues earlier warnings.

REMINDER

- FCW is enabled with the "Moderate" sensitivity by factory default.
- If FCW is turned on during the previous trip, it remains on at

REMINDER

the next startup with the same sensitivity setting.

- If FCW was turned off, it automatically turns on at the next startup with the sensitivity reset to "Moderate".

System Limitations

- FCW may not issue warnings for certain targets or situations, including but not limited to:
  - Oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that cut obliquely into the your path
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in adjacent lanes
  - Animals
  - Non-standard vehicles, such as water trucks, box trucks, and construction vehicles
- FCW may be affected or inoperative under the following conditions, including but not limited to:
  - The vehicle is operating in poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - The vehicle is operating in poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, glare, or direct sunlight.
  - Sensors are dirty, hazy, damaged, or blocked.
  - The hood or trunk is open or not fully closed.
  - The driver presses the brake pedal.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
  - ESC is disabled or the ESC fault indicator is on.
  - Vehicle modifications (such as thick repainting, films, tape, or decorative items) impair camera or mmWave radar performance.
  - The system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- FCW may be unable to properly respond to complex traffic, including but not limited to the following circumstances:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
  - Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
  - Pedestrians are not detected due to special clothing or occlusion.
  - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, e-bicycle, motorcycle, or an unusually shaped vehicle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.

  - The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
- FCW may trigger unnecessary warnings for puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- The front mmWave radars may experience temporary malfunctions from detection limitations if the vehicle is driven for an extended period under special road conditions such as circular parking garages or tunnels. The function will resume once the vehicle leaves such conditions.

WARNING

- Always drive safely and remain alert to surrounding traffic. FCW is not a substitute for normal braking in any event.
- If FCW gives an alarm, the driver must brake or steer as appropriate.
- If the vehicle travels too close to the vehicle ahead for too long, a safety distance warning will be given. If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly, a collision may be unavoidable.
- As the pedestrian protection function is limited by certain physical conditions, you must take timely and effective control of the vehicle under dangerous conditions. FCW may not issue warnings due to limitations in certain pedestrian protection scenarios.

WARNING

- The system cannot completely protect pedestrians or avoid accidents.
- The pedestrian protection function may occasionally trigger unnecessary warnings in complex situations such as curves.
- System failure, which may be caused by misalignment of the front mmWave radars or cameras, may trigger wrong warnings.
- Do not attempt to test FCW with cartons, metal plates, dummies, or other objects, as the system may not function properly and thus causing accidents.
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the mmWave radars and cameras in any of the following situations:
  - The mmWave radar or front camera has been removed.
  - Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
  - The vehicle has experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.
- Use FCW based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

REMINDER

- FCW cannot issue warnings under all circumstances. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles, pedestrians, and cyclists.

REMINDER

- When the radar or front camera is contaminated or covered, a message will appear on the instrument cluster. In this case, clean the sensor surface as instructed, as contamination or obstruction may cause sensor blindness. When the sensor is dirty or covered, FCW is disabled. After clearing, it resumes normal operation.

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)

- The automatic emergency braking (AEB) system uses the front mmWave radar or the camera to detect vehicles, pedestrians, and cyclists ahead. The system is triggered to help avoid collision or reduce the impact if possible serious collisions are detected.
- At about 4–150 km/h, the AEB system monitors the road ahead in real time and automatically applies braking if a collision risk with a vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclists is detected.
- During emergency braking, the instrument cluster displays a braking indicator and a prompt message "Emergency braking", and an audible alarm is triggered simultaneously.

WARNING

- AEB is a driver assistance feature designed to help the driver in avoid or mitigate collisions, but it cannot prevent collisions under all circumstances.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking efficiency, and tire status. It may also be mistakenly triggered by misidentification. AEB can not replace your judgment and operation.

Function Settings

- To enable or disable AEB on the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

WARNING

- Disabling AEB is strongly discouraged, because this would prevent system assistance in reducing vehicle speed and avoiding/mitigating collisions.

REMINDER

- AEB is enabled by factory default and remains on by default after each restart.

System Limitations

- AEB is only activated when the speed exceeds 4 km/h. This feature is designed to reduce the risk of collision but does not guarantee collision avoidance under all circumstances. Always drive with caution.
- Targets that may not be responded to include, but are not limited to:
  - Oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that cut obliquely into the vehicle's path
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in adjacent lanes

- Animals
- Non-standard vehicles, such as water trucks, box trucks, and construction vehicles

- AEB may be affected or inoperative under the following conditions, including but not limited to:
  - The vehicle is operating in poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - The vehicle is operating in poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, glare, or direct sunlight.
  - The road conditions are poor due to pits, bumps, slippery surfaces, or steep slopes.
  - Sensors are dirty, hazy, damaged, or blocked.
  - The hood or trunk is open or not fully closed.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
  - ESC is disabled or the ESC fault indicator is on.
  - Vehicle modifications (such as thick repainting, films, tape, decorative items) impair camera or mmWave radar performance.
  - The system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- AEB may be unable to properly respond to complex traffic, including but not limited to the following circumstances:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
  - Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
  - Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
  - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, e-bicycle, motorcycle, or an unusually shaped vehicle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
  - The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
- System performance may be reduced in some cases, including but not limited to the following:
  - The front bumper is strongly impacted from accidents or other causes.
  - The brake pads are excessively worn or the braking system malfunctions.
  - Tires are improperly inflated or worn out.
  - Unqualified tires are installed.

- Snow chains are installed.
- A small spare tire or tire repair kit are used.
- The vehicle is heavily loaded.
- The vehicle is in the break-in period.

- AEB may trigger unnecessary braking for puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- The front mmWave radars may experience temporary malfunctions from detection limitations if the vehicle is driven for an extended period under special road conditions such as circular parking garages or tunnels. The function will resume once the vehicle leaves such conditions.
- AEB cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as towing or snow mode.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, AEB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- Always drive safely and remain alert to surrounding traffic. AEB is not a substitute for normal braking in any event.
- As the pedestrian protection function is limited by certain physical conditions, you must take timely and effective control of the vehicle under dangerous conditions. AEB may not brake due to limitations in certain pedestrian protection scenarios.
- The system cannot completely protect pedestrians or avoid accidents.
- The pedestrian protection function may occasionally trigger unnecessary braking in complex situations such as curves.
- System failure, which may be caused by misalignment of the front mmWave radars or cameras, may trigger unnecessary braking.
- Do not attempt to test AEB with cartons, metal plates, dummies, or other objects, as the system may not function properly and thus causing accidents.
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the mmWave radars and cameras in any of the following situations:
  - The mmWave radar or front camera has been removed.
  - Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
  - The vehicle has experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.
- Use AEB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

REMINDER

- The system will not trigger AEB when you are aware of an emergency warning but turn the steering wheel, accelerate, or brake.
- AEB cannot brake under all circumstances. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles, pedestrians, and cyclists.

REMINDER

- When the radar or front camera is contaminated or covered, a message will appear on the instrument cluster. In this case, clean the sensor surface as instructed, as contamination or obstruction may cause sensor blindness. When the sensor is dirty or covered, AEB is disabled. After clearing, it resumes normal operation.

Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA)

- At around 10–20 km/h, the front cross traffic alert (FCTA) system continuously monitor the environment ahead through sensors such as mmWave radars or cameras on both sides of the front bumper. If a potential collision with a crossing vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist is detected, the system issues a warning to alert the driver.
- This warning is provided through a beep from the buzzer and an animation of radar waves on the instrument cluster, indicating the side where a potential collision may occur.

Function Settings

- To enable or disable FCTA on the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

REMINDER

- The function is disabled by factory default and retains the previous setting each time the vehicle is restarted.

System Limitations

- FCTA is a driver assistance feature and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Visibility is poor due to nighttime, rain, snow, or other extreme weather.
  - The function is disabled.
  - The vehicle is not in Drive.
  - The hood or trunk is open or not fully closed.
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
  - The steering wheel is turned sharply or rapidly.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - The driver press and release the brake pedal.
  - System initialization is in progress.
  - The system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- In the following situations (including but not limited to the scenarios listed below), the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as front obstructions, obstacle type, or appearance timing, which may result in no warning, a false warning, or a delayed warning.

- When a target vehicle is approaching from the side at a high speed, the system may issue warnings as appropriate.
- The mmWave radars on both side of the front bumper are blocked by dirt, snow, or other obstructions.
- Detection may be affected by noise or electromagnetic interference, leading to delays or malfunction.
- The vehicle coming from the side suddenly changes the lane.
- The target vehicle is obscured.
- The radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle or electric moped) is too small.
- The vehicle is operating in severe weather conditions, such as rain or snow.
- MmWave radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
- The vehicle encounters complex metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
- Vehicles coming from the front left or right side are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
- Other conditions when targets are beyond the detection capability or range happen.

- Influence of vibration or collision on the mmWave radars can degrade system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary warning may occur in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.

WARNING

- FCTA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause FCTA to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use FCTA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- FCTA warnings may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

Front Cross Traffic Braking (FCTB)

- When the vehicle is traveling below 20 km/h, the front cross traffic braking (FCTB) system continuously monitor the environment ahead through sensors such as mmWave radars or cameras on both sides of the front bumper. If a potential collision with a crossing vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist is detected, the system applies automatic braking to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating the collision.
- You will be informed of the braking through a message and an animation of radar waves on the instrument cluster, indicating the side where a potential collision may occur.

WARNING

- FCTB is a driver assistance feature designed to help the driver in

WARNING

avoid or mitigate collisions, but it cannot prevent collisions under all circumstances.

- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking efficiency, and tire status. It may also be mistakenly triggered by misidentification.
- Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

Function Settings

- To enable or disable FCTB, go to infotainment touchscreen, tap → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

REMINDER

- FCTB is active only when both reminder and braking are enabled.
- The function is disabled by factory default and retains the previous setting each time the vehicle is restarted.

System Limitations

- FCTB is a driver assistance feature and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- FCTB may not brake or disengage during a braking in certain conditions, including but not limited to the following:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Visibility is poor due to nighttime, rain, snow, or other extreme weather.
  - The function is set to "OFF" or "Warning only".
  - The vehicle is not in Drive.
  - The hood or trunk is open or not fully closed.
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
  - The steering wheel is turned sharply or rapidly.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - The driver press and release the brake pedal.
  - System initialization is in progress.
  - The system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- In the following situations (including but not limited to the scenarios listed below), the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as front obstructions, obstacle type, or appearance timing, which may result in no braking, a false braking, or a delayed braking.
  - When a target vehicle is approaching from the side at a high speed, the system may not brake as appropriate.
  - The mmWave radars on both side of the front bumper are blocked by dirt, snow, or other obstructions.

- Detection may be affected by noise or electromagnetic interference, leading to delays or malfunction.
- The vehicle coming from the side suddenly changes the lane.
- The target vehicle is obscured.
- The radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle or electric moped) is too small.
- The vehicle is operating in severe weather conditions, such as rain or snow.
- MmWave radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
- The vehicle encounters complex metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
- The vehicle is heavily loaded.
- Vehicles coming from the front left or right side are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
- Other conditions when targets are beyond the detection capability or range happen.

- Influence of vibration or collision on the mmWave radars can degrade system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary braking may occur in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, FCTB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- FCTB is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause FCTB to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use FCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- FCTB operations may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)

- The traffic sign recognition (TSR) system detects speed limit signs using cameras or map data and illuminates the speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster to maintain an appropriate speed.
- TSR includes speed limit information function (SLIF), road sign information (RSI), speed limit forecast (SLF), and intelligent speed assistance (ISA).
  - Speed limit information function (SLIF): detects speed limit information by using cameras or map data and lights up the speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster.
  - Road sign information (RSI): detects road sign information by using cameras or map data and lights up the road sign indicator on the instrument cluster.
  - Intelligent speed assistance (ISA): alerts against speeding with a speed limit indicator on the instrument

cluster or a audible alarm, when the vehicle speed exceeds the detected limit.

Function Settings

- To enable or disable TSR and its subfunctions on the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- TSR is enabled by default.
- OFF: TSR and all subfunctions are disabled.
- ON: SLIF and RSI are enabled, while ISA can be enabled or disabled according to your needs.
- Audible alert for speed limit change: enables/disables audible alerts when the speed limit changes are detected.
- Intelligent speed assistance (ISA): enables/disables visual and/or audible alerts when the vehicle speed exceeds the detected speed limit.
- Audible speed limit warning (SLW): enables/disables audible alerts when the vehicle exceeds the speed limit (shortcut: swipe down from the top of the infotainment touchscreen).

REMINDER

- Map data is updated regularly to ensure system performance.
- TSR only identifies speed limit signs, not any other traffic signs, and does not help control the vehicle. Drive responsibly.
- The front camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If it does not, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- If TSR malfunctions and becomes unavailable, have the system repaired immediately.

System Limitations

- TSR is a driver assistance feature and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- Speed limit sign detection is sensitive to the environment. Situations that may lead to TSR failure or performance degradation include but are not limited to:
  - The front windshield is dirty or fogged, or the front cameras are blocked.
  - The light changes suddenly, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
  - The speed limit signs are unclear, distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked, or covered.
  - Visibility is poor due to snow, rain, or fog.
  - Weight or width limit signs are not in standard size as per national regulations.
  - The system may obtain incorrect speed limit information due to time limitations of map-based data. This may occur, for example, during road construction, when the posted speed limit has changed, or when speed limit signs are newly added or removed.
  - Vehicle positioning may be inaccurate in complex road environments, such as multi-level elevated roads or parallel main and auxiliary roads.

- The system operation may be affected by cracked windshields within the field of view of the front camera, dyed or incorrectly coated windshield, reflective objects placed on the dashboard, or any other interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- TSR only serves to alert for speeding and cannot assist in speed control. Do not be over-reliant on it.
- TSR is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

CAUTION

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Speed limit signs are unclear.
  - Speed limit signs are incomplete.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the front cameras or late function activation include but are not limited to:
  - Cameras are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - The vehicle is operating in extreme weather conditions, such as rain, snow, or smog.

CAUTION

- TSR may not work, work improperly, or deactivate itself in the following situations:
  - The driver assistance system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Side Safety Assist

Lane Departure Assist (LDA)

- When the vehicle unintentionally departs from its lane, LDA issues an alert or assists in steering the vehicle back into the lane.
- Lane departure assist (LDA) includes lane departure warning (LDW) and lane departure prevention (LDP). The system's operating speed range is 60–150 km/h.
- Lane departure warning (LDW): The system detects lane markings and the vehicle's position within the lane using cameras and other sensors. If the vehicle unintentionally drifts out of its lane without a driver steering input (significant steering wheel or turn signal operation), the system issues a warning via instrument cluster display (lane marking on the departure side shown in red), steering wheel vibration, or an audible alert to help reduce lane departure risks.
- Lane departure prevention (LDP): The system detects lane markings and the vehicle's position within the lane using cameras and other sensors. If the vehicle unintentionally drifts out of its

lane without a driver steering input (significant steering wheel rotation or turn signal operation), the system issues a warning via instrument cluster display (lane marking on the departure side shown in blue) and applies steering assistance to guide the vehicle back into the lane, helping reduce lane departure risks.

Function Settings

- To enable or disable this function on the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**. Several options are provided:
  - OFF: deactivates all LDA functions.
  - Reminder: turns on LDW only, which does not implement steering intervention.
  - Correction: turns on LDP to offer corrective steering inputs.
  - All activated: turns on both LDW and LDP.
- All LDA functions are enabled by factory default and remains on by default after each restart.
- The LDA alert mode is set to steering wheel vibration by factory default and can be changed to Sound, Vibration, or Sound + Vibration.
- LDA default sensitivity level is set as "Moderate". In case of fatigue driving, the system automatically switches to "High". Restarting the vehicle restores sensitivity to "Moderate".

REMINDER

- LDA will be suppressed if a turn signal is used and the vehicle changes lane as indicated by the turn signal.

REMINDER

- LDA is suppressed in the event of continued lane straddling.
- LDA is suppressed if any door, the hood, or the trunk lid is open or faulty.
- The camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If it does not, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- While LDP is active, the driver must keep both hands on the steering wheel, otherwise the system will audibly prompt the driver to take over the steering wheel.
- When LDA fails, is displayed on the instrument cluster with an audible alert and a prompt message. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

System Limitations

- LDA is a driver assistance feature and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- Lane marking detection is sensitive to the environment. Situations that may lead to LDA failure or performance degradation include but are not limited to:
  - The front windshield is dirty or fogged, or the cameras are blocked.
  - There is glare from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles.

- The light changes suddenly, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
- Lane markings are obscured by tree shadows on roads in direct sunlight.
- Visibility is poor due to snow, rain, or fog.
- Lane markings are confusing or unclear (for example, when old and new lines overlap or are temporarily altered during road construction).
- Lane markings change rapidly, for example when lanes split, cross, or merge.
- Lane lines are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred, or covered by dirt/snow.
- Lanes may be narrow, change in number, have sudden changes in lane markings (such as on ramps or exits), or feature complex lane arrangements.
- Slopes or winding roads where the vehicle travels too close to the vehicle ahead or when the vehicle ahead obscures lane markings

- The system may be unable to correct steering in time due to slippery road surfaces or excessive lateral deviation speed, such as:
  - Poor road conditions, such as after road spraying, or wet/slippery surfaces following rain or snow
  - The lateral deviation speed is excessive or insufficient.
  - Other conditions that affect or reduce the vehicle's steering performance happen.
- The system operation may be affected by cracked windshields within the field of view of the front camera, dyed or incorrectly coated windshield, reflective objects placed on the dashboard, or any other interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- For safety, do not intentionally test LDA functions.
- Do not be over-reliant on LDA functions. LDW only serves to alert for lane departure and cannot assist in steering control.
- LDA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle if the function is suppressed or deactivated. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Use LDA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- Disabling LDA is recommended under any of the following circumstances:
  - Driving in a sporty style
  - Severe weather conditions
  - On uneven roads
- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Lane lines are unclear.
  - Lane lines are incomplete.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the cameras or late function activation include but are not limited to:

CAUTION

- Cameras are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
- The vehicle is operating in extreme weather conditions, such as rain, snow, or smog.

- LDW and LDP cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as towing or snow mode.
- LDA may not work, work improperly, or deactivate itself when:
  - The driver assistance system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)

- Emergency lane keeping assist (ELKA) detects lane markings and road edges ahead with sensors such as cameras and detects vehicles in adjacent lanes with corner mmWave radars. If the vehicle is detected to unintentionally drift out of its lane, or be at risk of doing so, and is likely to collide with a detected target, corrective steering input of ELKA keeps the vehicle in its lane. This helps prevent unintentional lane departures and reduces the risk of collision with oncoming traffics or overtaking vehicles in adjacent lanes.

Function Settings

- To enable or disable ELKA on the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- ELKA is enabled by factory default and remains on by default after each restart.

REMINDER

- ELKA will deactivate if the driver forcefully presses the brake or accelerator pedal, or makes significant steering inputs.
- If the turn signal is activated and the driver steers in the indicated direction, ELKA will be suppressed when the vehicle is departing toward the road edge or toward the opposite lane with oncoming traffic present.
- If the driver continuously drives over lane markings or the road edge, ELKA will be suppressed.
- If corrective steering could cause a collision with an obstacle along the corrected path, even when there is a risk of road departure or side collision, ELKA will not intervene.
- The front camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If it does not, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- If a malfunction occurs, the indicator will illuminate on the instrument cluster and ELKA will be unavailable. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

System Limitations

- ELKA's detection of lane markings, road edges, and obstacles is sensitive to the environment. Situations that may lead to no intervention,

inappropriate intervention, or reduced performance of the system include but are not limited to:

- The front windshield is dirty or fogged, or the front cameras are blocked.
- There is glare from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles.
- The light changes suddenly, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
- Lane markings are obscured by tree shadows on roads in direct sunlight.
- Road boundaries are unidentifiable due to grass, soil, curbs and so on.
- Visibility is poor due to snow, rain, or fog.
- Lane markings are confusing or unclear (for example, when old and new lines overlap or are temporarily altered during road construction).
- Lane markings change rapidly, for example when lanes split, cross, or merge.
- Lane lines are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred, or covered by dirt/snow.
- Lanes may be narrow, change in number, have sudden changes in lane markings (such as on ramps or exits), or feature complex lane arrangements.
- Slopes or winding roads where the vehicle travels too close to the vehicle ahead or when the vehicle ahead obscures lane markings

- The system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as obstructions, obstacle type, position, or appearance timing, which may result in a delayed action. Situations include but are not limited to the following:
  - Large vehicles ahead block the radar or camera detection area.
  - Obstacles move quickly or enter the area in front of or beside the vehicle at close range.
  - Fences, traffic barriers, traffic cones, or other obstacles is present in the front-side or rear-side of the vehicle that the system may fail to detect.
  - Obstacles block the radar or camera's detection area, such as vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in the front lateral or rear lateral areas.
  - Obstacles in the front lateral or rear lateral areas with low visual contrast against the surrounding environment.
  - Targets in the front lateral or rear lateral areas that can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
  - Targets in the front lateral or rear lateral are located on a curve.
  - Other conditions when targets are beyond the detection capability or range happen.
- The system may be unable to correct steering in time due to slippery road surfaces or excessive lateral deviation speed, such as:
  - Poor road conditions, such as after road spraying, or wet/slippery surfaces following rain or snow
  - The lateral deviation speed is excessive or insufficient.
  - Other conditions that affect or reduce the vehicle's steering performance happen.
- The system operation may be affected by cracked windshields within the field of view of the front camera, dyed or incorrectly coated windshield, reflective objects placed on the

dashboard, or any other interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- For safety, do not intentionally test the ELKA function.
- The ELKA function only assists in steering correction to return the vehicle to its original lane when there is a collision risk due to unintended road or lane departure. It cannot continuously control the vehicle to remain in the center of the lane. Do not rely on ELKA to avoid side collisions.
- TSR is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Use ELKA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - There are pedestrians, animals, or specialty or specially-shaped vehicles.
  - Lane lines are unclear or incomplete.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late warnings include, but are not limited to:

CAUTION

  - Cameras are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - The vehicle is operating in extreme weather conditions, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - Camera lens are partially or completely blocked.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late alarms include, but are not limited to:
  - MmWave radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - The vehicle is operating in extreme weather conditions, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
- ELKA cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as towing or snow mode.
- ELKA may not work, work improperly, or deactivate itself when:
  - The vehicle is at an intersection.
  - The driver assistance system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Blind Spot Detection (BSD)

- When a target in the driver's blind spot is detected, the system gives a warning to remind the driver of safe driving.

- The blind spot detection (BSD) system uses sensors such as radars to detect targets such as vehicles or cyclists in the driver's blind spot. When the vehicle is traveling at about 15–150 km/h, the side mirror indicator flashes if BSD detects a target in the blind area. If the driver toggles the turn signal lever at this time, the side mirror indicator on the target side, the instrument indicator, and the light-colored radar wave on the same side of the instrument will flash, with an audible alarm given (see "Function Settings") to warn the driver of a possible collision.

REMINDER

- Do not attach any objects to the side mirror lens, as it may interfere with the normal operation of BSD.
- The driver must ensure the normal operation of BSD, keeping its rear corner mmWave radars in good condition. For example, dirt, snow, or other obstructions need to be cleared right away.
- In towing mode*, BSD does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the side mmWave radars can degrade the BSD system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Function Settings

- To enable or disable BSD on the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The function is enabled by factory default and retains the previous setting each time the vehicle is restarted.

System Limitations

- BSD is a driver assistance feature and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- BSD and its related features may operate improperly or deactivate in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Poor visibility conditions such as rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, etc.
  - Driving on sharp curves.
  - The vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h.
  - The vehicle is overtaking the preceding vehicle or encountering an oncoming vehicle.
  - The system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- Poor lighting conditions, such as glare or reflections, may cause the system to incorrectly detect obstacles. For example, railroad tracks, gantries, height restriction bars, traffic signs, or reflective road studs may be misidentified as obstacles, triggering an unintended warning.

WARNING

- When the BSD system gives a warning, the driver should avoid lane changes toward the warning-indicated side. The driver should ensure that lane changes are made in a safe manner at all times.

WARNING

- BSD can not replace interior rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- Drivers should stay alert, monitor potential hazards, and manually intervene (e.g., slow down, brake, steer) and control the vehicle to ensure driving safety. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Door Open Warning (DOW)

- The door open warning (DOW) system detects targets on both sides of the vehicle, such as vehicles and cyclists, using sensors such as radars. When the vehicle is stationary with power on or moving slowly at a speed below 2 km/h, the alarm indicator on the side mirror illuminates when DOW detects a collision risk during door opening. The indicator remains on until DOW is deactivated. If an occupant opens the door at this time, the indicator on the corresponding side flashes and an audio alert sounds, reminding the occupant of the collision risk.

REMINDER

- Do not attach any objects to the side mirror surface, as this may affect BSD operation.
- Ensure the normal operation of the DOW system, keeping its radars in good condition. Dirt, snow, or other obstructions should be removed promptly.
- In towing mode*, DOW does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the side mmWave radars

REMINDER

can degrade the DOW system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Function Settings

- To enable or disable DOW on the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The function is enabled by factory default and retains the previous setting each time the vehicle is restarted.

System Limitations

- DOW is a driver assistance feature and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- DOW and its related features may operate improperly or deactivate in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Visibility is poor due to rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, or other extreme weather.
  - The vehicle stops at a turning point or near a wall.
  - A large vehicle behind blocks the radar detection area.
  - There are small targets or slow-moving targets.
  - The target is moving fast or turning, such as changing lanes to the rear of your vehicle, or suddenly entering the detection area behind your vehicle.
  - The system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).

- Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
- The system malfunctions or requires servicing.

- Poor lighting conditions, such as glare or reflections, may cause the system to misdetect obstacles. For example, railroad tracks, gantries, height restriction bars, traffic signs, or reflective road studs may be misidentified as obstacles, triggering an unintended warning.

WARNING

- DOW cannot detect objects behind other vehicles or obstacles.
- DOW cannot replace the use of interior and exterior rearview mirrors or manual visual checks. Visually checking the surroundings before opening a door is the most effective safety measure and the responsibility of all occupants.
- DOW may give a warning when there is no risk of collision. Stay alert and monitor traffic to decide if action is needed.
- DOW can only provide a warning of potential collision risks and cannot prevent accidents.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Rear Safety Assist

Rear Collision Warning (RCW)

- When the vehicle is traveling below 150 km/h, the rear collision warning (RCW) system monitors the rear driving environment in real time using sensors such as radars and cameras. The system issues a warning when a rear-end collision risk is detected.
- During warning, the interior ambient lights and the front left/right ambient lights on the corresponding side illuminate steadily, and the rear area of the vehicle image on the instrument cluster is highlighted in red. The hazard warning lights are also activated to alert following drivers.
- RCW does not operate while the vehicle is reversing.

WARNING

- RCW is a driver assistance feature. Its operation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, target type, distance to the target, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in delayed warnings, missed alerts, or false warnings. RCW cannot replace your judgment and operation.
- Ensure the normal operation of the RCW system, keeping its radars in good condition. Dirt, snow, or other obstructions should be removed promptly.
- In towing mode*, RCW does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the rear mmWave radars can degrade the RCW system performance. In this case, contact

WARNING

a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Function Settings

- To enable or disable RCW on the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The function is disabled by factory default and retains the previous setting each time the vehicle is restarted.

System Limitations

- RCW is a driver assistance feature and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The RCW system only takes effect when the vehicle is stationary or moving forward. RCW does not operate while the vehicle is reversing.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Visibility is poor due to rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, or other extreme weather.
  - Any door, the hood, or the trunk lid is open or faulty.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel, or the vehicle has a risk of lateral instability (such as excessive steering wheel angle or high steering rate).
  - The driver brakes hard.
  - The system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- The system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as rear obstructions, obstacle type, position, or appearance timing, which may result in no warning or a delayed warning. Situations include but are not limited to the following:
  - The vehicle is operating in poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - Large vehicles behind block the radar or camera detection area.
  - The rear area is obstructed, or the obstacles have low contrast against the front environment, resulting in incomplete, inaccurate, or unclear detection.
  - The vehicle or the rear target is on a curve.
  - Targets behind can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
  - Obstacles move quickly or enter the area behind the vehicle at close range.
  - The vehicle is reversing.
  - Other conditions when targets are beyond the detection capability or range happen.
- Poor lighting conditions, such as glare or reflections, may cause the system to incorrectly detect obstacles. For example, railroad tracks, gantries, height restriction bars, traffic signs, or reflective road studs may be misidentified as obstacles, triggering an unintended warning.

WARNING

- RCW is a driver assistance feature. Its operation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, target type, distance to the target, driving environment, and system response delay. RCW only provides reminder assistance and cannot replace your judgment and operation. Do not be over-reliant on the RCW system. RCW cannot replace your judgement and operation.
- RCW can only provide a warning of potential collision risks and cannot prevent accidents. When the vehicle issues a warning, you should take immediate measures to prevent the vehicle from further danger.
- RCW may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

- When the vehicle is reversing, the rear cross traffic alert (RCTA) system detects moving vehicles in the rear blind spot and issues a warning when it detects a potential collision risk with rear lateral crossing vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists. The RCTA operating speed range is 0–15 km/h.
- This warning is provided through an audible alert, voice notifications, and an animation of radar waves indicating the side of possible collision on the instrument cluster.

WARNING

- RCTA is a driver assistance feature. Its operation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, sensor accuracy, target type, distance to the target, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in delayed warnings, missed alerts, or false warnings. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

Function Settings

- To enable or disable RCTA on the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- This function is disabled by factory default. When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System Limitations

- RCTA is a driver assistance feature and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Visibility is poor due to nighttime, rain, snow, or other extreme weather.
  - The function is disabled.

- The vehicle is not in Reverse.
- System initialization is in progress.
- The system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
- Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
- The system malfunctions or requires servicing.

- The system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as rear obstructions, obstacle type, position, or appearance timing, which may result in no warning or a delayed warning. Situations include but are not limited to the following:
  - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane suddenly.
  - The target vehicle is approaching from behind at a high speed.
  - The vehicle is operating in sharp curves, slopes, or similar road conditions.
  - The target is obscured.
  - The vehicle is operating in severe weather conditions, such as rain or snow. Radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked. The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, e-bicycle, or motorcycle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
  - The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- In towing mode*, RCTA does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the mmWave radars can degrade system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary warning may occur in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.

WARNING

- RCTA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause RCTA to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use RCTA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- RCTA may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

Rear Cross Traffic Braking (RCTB)

- The rear cross traffic braking (RCTB) system warns the driver and assists with braking when the vehicle is reversing out of a vertical or angled parking space and there is a collision risk with rear lateral crossing vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists. This helps avoid collisions with traffic crossing

behind the vehicle, particularly when the driver's view is blocked by neighboring parked vehicles. The RCTB operating speed range is 0–10 km/h.

- You will be informed of the braking through a message and an animation of radar waves on the instrument cluster, indicating the side where a potential collision may occur.

WARNING

- RCTB is a driver assistance feature designed to help the driver in avoid or mitigate collisions, but it cannot prevent collisions under all circumstances.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking efficiency, and tire status. It may also be mistakenly triggered by misidentification. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

Function Settings

- To enable or disable RCTB on the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The function is disabled by factory default and retains the previous setting each time the vehicle is restarted.

System Limitations

- RCTB is a driver assistance feature and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to brake in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Visibility is poor due to nighttime, rain, snow, or other extreme weather.
  - The function is set to "OFF" or "Warning only".
  - The vehicle is not in Reverse.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - System initialization is in progress.
  - The system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- The system may fail to detect, misidentify, or experience delayed detection of obstacles due to factors such as rear obstructions, obstacle type, position, or timing, which may result in no braking or a delayed braking. Situations include but are not limited to the following:
  - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane suddenly.
  - The target vehicle is approaching from behind at a high speed.
  - The vehicle is operating in sharp curves, slopes, or similar road conditions.
  - The target is obscured.
  - The vehicle is operating in severe weather conditions, such as rain or snow. Radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked. The vehicle

encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.

- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, cyclist, e-bicycle, or motorcycle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
- The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.

- In towing mode*, RCTB does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the mmWave radars can degrade system performance. If this is detected, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary braking may occur in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, RCTB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- RCTB is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause RCTB to fail or lead to late braking.
- Use RCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- RCTB may delay braking, fail to brake, or brake unnecessarily due to system limitations.

Intelligent High Beam Control (IHBC)

- Intelligent high beam control (IHBC) is a driver assistance feature that helps the driver use the high beam appropriately in dark environments. The system automatically switches from low beam to high beam to maximize visibility in low-light conditions. When an oncoming vehicle is detected, the system automatically switches from high beam to low beam to prevent dazzling other drivers. It also switches to low beam in urban areas or under other conditions.

Function Settings

- To enable or disable IHBC on the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- Indicator status:

Standby	Activated	Fault
		

High beam on/off conditions

- Auto activation conditions:
  - The light switch is in the AUTO position.
  - The vehicle speed is between 35 and 140 km/h.
  - The area ahead is dark.
- Auto off conditions:
  - During daylight or nighttime, the system suppresses the high beam when ambient lighting is sufficient.
  - At night, the system suppresses the high beam when other road users are detected within a certain range ahead.
  - At night, turning on turn signal suppresses the high beam. After the turn signal is turned off, the high beam is activated again if conditions are met.

WARNING

- IHBC may be falsely triggered or fail to operate due to various environmental factors and conditions. Typical scenarios include, but are not limited to:
  - The vehicle is operating in severe weather conditions, such as fog, rain, or snow.
  - There are road users with poor lighting (such as pedestrians and cyclists), railways or waterways nearby, or animals on the road.

WARNING

- There are strongly reflective objects, such as highway traffic signs and water reflections on the road.
- The front windshield that is fogged, dirty, or blocked by stickers or decorations.

CAUTION

- IHBC serves as an auxiliary light control and cannot replace the driver's judgment. You must observe road regulations and switch between high and low beams based on changing road conditions.
- If the vehicle has been involved in a collision or the sensor has been reassembled, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for sensor calibration to avoid affecting system performance.

REMINDER

- System malfunctions or lighting system failures may affect IHBC operation.
- Activating high beam manually will suppress IHBC.

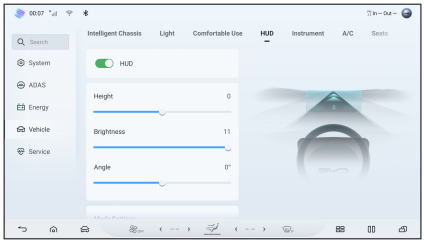
Head-up Display (HUD)*

Head-up Display (HUD): HUD projects important information, including vehicle speed, speed limit, ACC, lane departure,

and BSD, into the driver's field of view on the front windshield. It improves driving safety by preventing the driver from frequently changing the focus of eyes.

How to Use

- To enable or disable HUD, go to infotainment touchscreen → → → **Vehicle** → **HUD**.



- By factory default, HUD is on and the image is displayed. When it is disabled, no HUD image is displayed. The system defaults to the previous settings when the vehicle starts.
  - Height adjusting: adjust the height of HUD virtual image in between -10 and 10. A total of 21 values are available, and the default value is 0.
  - Brightness adjusting: adjust the brightness of HUD virtual image in between 0 and 10. A total of 11 values are available, and the default value is 5.
  - Angle adjusting: adjust the angle of HUD virtual image. A total of 11 values are available, and the default value is 0°.
  - Mode setting: select Classic (default setting) or Snow mode according to the environment of the vehicle.
  - Settings optional for display: safe driving assistance or navigation. They are enabled by default. Tap the button to select the setting for HUD display. Tap the button again to deselect and close the item.

CAUTION

- Make sure that the head-up display is unobstructed.
- Wipe the dust on the HUD dust-proof board with a soft cotton cloth or paper towel.
- Make sure no water or other liquid flow into the opening of the head-up display.

Direct Tire Pressure Monitoring

- The direct tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) is an auxiliary system that monitors tire pressure in real time to improve vehicle safety and comfort and reduce tire wear and energy consumption due to insufficient tire pressure.
- You can access the instrument cluster menu by pressing the button on the steering wheel, navigate to the driving information bar by pressing the ◁ and ▷ buttons, and then select the tire pressure display screen using the scroll button.

Tire pressure system alarm

- When the pressure of any tire is lower than 80% of the standard tire pressure (taking temperature into account) and the system is running, the tire pressure fault warning light lights up and the tire pressure value turns yellow, it is recommended to check for slow air leakage and inflate the tire to the correct pressure value.
- When the temperature of any tire is above 85°C for three consecutive minutes, the tire pressure system

gives a high temperature alarm, and the temperature value of the corresponding tire turns yellow, it is recommended to stop the vehicle and wait for the tire temperature to decrease before further driving.

- When the system is running, if a fault occurs, the tire pressure fault warning light is solid on after flashing, and the message "No Signal" or "Please check TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster. In that case, check the tire pressure monitoring module, and check for any surrounding electromagnetic source nearby. If the alarm persists for a long time, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- The system does not stop vehicle traveling in the event of abnormal tire pressure. Therefore, each time before driving, check whether the tire pressure meets the requirements specified by the manufacturer. If not, do not drive, otherwise vehicle damage or personal injuries can occur.
- If pressure is found to be abnormal while driving, check the tire pressure immediately. If the low pressure warning light comes on, avoid sharp turns or emergency braking, and reduce vehicle speed, pull it over to the curb and stop as soon as possible. Driving with low tire pressure can cause permanent damage to tires and increase the likelihood of tire scrapping. Serious tire damage can lead to traffic accidents, resulting in serious injuries or deaths.

CAUTION

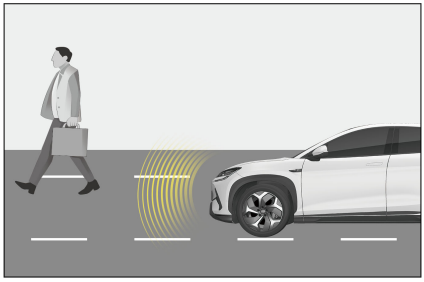
- The running time of the tire pressure monitoring module is related to the daily travel distance and other factors.
- The monitoring module regularly transmits tire pressure and other information to the display. Therefore, if the tire pressure drops suddenly or there is a flat tire, the monitoring module will not transmit data to the display until the next monitoring. In this case, the vehicle may be out of control. If there is a flat tire and monitoring fails to inform, or if you feel that there are some tire problems, stop driving immediately instead of waiting for the display to signal an alarm.
- Incorrectly installed monitoring module affects the air tightness of the tire. It is recommended that the installation and replacement of the pressure monitoring module be carried out by professional technicians of a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in accordance with the requirements of the installation manual.
- Since tire pressure varies with regional temperatures, inflate or deflate the tires according to the values displayed on the instrument cluster and the standard tire pressure values.
- The tire pressure monitoring system may be disturbed by non-BYD approved electrical accessories on the vehicle. This is not a tire pressure system failure.
- The tire pressure system needs to be matched again after replacement of wheel rims or

CAUTION

spare tires* or tire rotations. Go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to re-match the tire pressure.

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)

- Acoustic vehicle alerting system (AVAS) refers to the alert sound to pedestrians near the vehicle when it is moving at a low speed.
- When driving forward:
  - The sound volume increases with vehicle speed increase in the range of 0 km/h to 20 km/h.
  - The sound volume decreases with vehicle speed increase in the range of 20 km/h to 30 km/h.
  - At speeds above 30 km/h, the sound stops.



- The vehicle makes a continuous and balanced sound when reversing.

How to Use

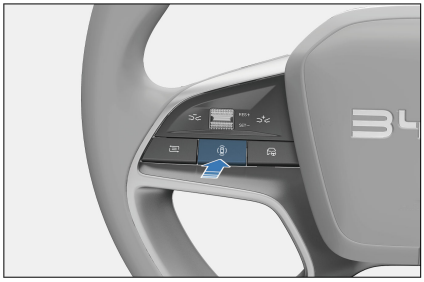
- To turn on or off the engine sound simulator*, slide down from the top of the infotainment touchscreen to access the shortcut screen (not supported in some regions).

WARNING

- The AVAS pause switch can only be used if there are no other road users within a short distance, and no audio prompt is needed considering the surroundings (for example, in a traffic jam or on the motorway). As long as pedestrians may appear around the vehicle, the AVAS needs to be turned on.
- If the vehicle is running at low speed with AVAS turned off, it is unable to alert pedestrians to the approaching vehicle, which may cause car accidents and even casualties in severe cases.
- If the AVAS sound cannot be heard when driving at a low speed, stop the vehicle in a relatively safe and quiet place, open the window, and then drive at a constant speed of 20 km/h in Drive and check whether the sound can be heard. If it is confirmed that there is no sound, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to deal with it.

Around View Monitor (AVM)

- With the ignition switched on, tap **Vehicle View** on the infotainment system homepage or press the button on the steering wheel to access AVM.
- Shift into Reverse and the AVM screen is automatically displayed.



- On the bottom of the infotainment touchscreen, tap the icon for the front, rear, right, or left view. View of the selected area is displayed in the image section.
- In the single front and rear views, double-tap the image section to switch to a 180° perspective displayed in full screen.



- Tap P to enable or disable the radar. When the radar is enabled, a warning is displayed as the vehicle is approaching an obstacle.
- Tap the vehicle image or the switching button to switch between transparent and nontransparent vehicle images.
  - After the vehicle starts, the transparent vehicle image displays the default view. It updates after the vehicle moves and displays a complete view under the vehicle when it is driven beyond its length.
- Tap the 3D view button 3D to switch to a 2D view, and tap again to return to the 3D view.

WARNING

- The AVM system provides transparent AVM view to show the image below the vehicle. This function is only for assisting in observation of area below the vehicle during parking/driving. Investigation of foreign objects below the vehicle and dangerous situations should be carried out in any other manner to ensure the safety of personnel and the vehicle.
- When the vehicle runs at a low speed, the transparent panoramic view function is affected by speed fluctuation or multiple stops, so there will be misalignment between the images below the vehicle and that outside the vehicle.
- The system is only to be used for parking/driving assistance. It is not safe to rely solely on this system to park or drive the vehicle, because there are some blind spots in front of and behind the vehicle. The surroundings of the vehicle should be observed in other ways during the parking/driving process, so as to avoid accidents.
- This system uses wide-angle fisheye cameras, so the object on the display screen may appear somewhat deformed in comparison with the actual object.
- When the side mirrors are not fully extended, do not use the AVM system; when using the system for parking/driving, ensure that all the vehicle doors are closed.
- The distance to an object displayed on the AVM screen may

WARNING

be different from the distance perceived subjectively, especially when the object is closer to the vehicle. Assess the distance in various ways.

- Cameras are installed above the front grille, side mirrors, and the rear license plate. Make sure the cameras are unobstructed.
- To prevent affecting camera performance, avoid spraying directly on the cameras when washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water. Wipe any water or dust off the camera in time.
- Protect the cameras from any impact to prevent damage or malfunction.
- After the vehicle is powered on, if you press the AVM start button or shift into Reverse while the infotainment system is not fully activated, the output on the AVM screen will be delayed or the screen will flash. This is a normal part of the camera power-on process.
- When one or more cameras in the system are not working, the corresponding views go black.
- When no camera is available, a "No video signal detected" message is displayed.

Parking Assist System

- During parking, the parking assist system detects obstacles using sensors and alerts the driver to their proximity via an image on the infotainment touchscreen and an audible alarm.
- This system aids in reversing, but always remain aware of the surroundings behind and around the vehicle during reversing.
- When you shift into Reverse, the infotainment touchscreen will automatically display a reversing image.
- Once reversing is complete, the screen will return to its previous screen.

WARNING

- When the vehicle speed is over 10 km/h, the parking assist system will cease to operate.
- Do not place any objects within the sensors' working range.
- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not wash the sensor with water or steam.
- When no camera is available, a "No video signal detected" message is displayed.

REMINDER

- The safety lines for reversing provide distance reference only when the vehicle is unloaded.
- For your driving safety, when the reversing image is displayed, all buttons will be disabled except some volume and calls-related buttons.

Parking Radar Switch

- To enable or disable the parking radar, go to infotainment touchscreen → → **ADAS** → **Parking Assistance**
- When the ignition is switched on, the parking assist system is enabled automatically.



- When the parking assist system is enabled, the vehicle is not in Park, and the EPB and AVH are released, the obstacle detection mode of the parking assist system is enabled. When enabled, the system raises an alarm if obstacles are found surrounding the vehicle; when disabled, it does not.

Sensor Type

- When the sensor detects an obstacle, an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen according to the location of the obstacle and its distance from the vehicle.
- When the driver conducts parallel parking or reverse parking, the sensor measures the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle and communicates this information through the infotainment touchscreen and the speaker. Be aware of the surroundings when using this system.

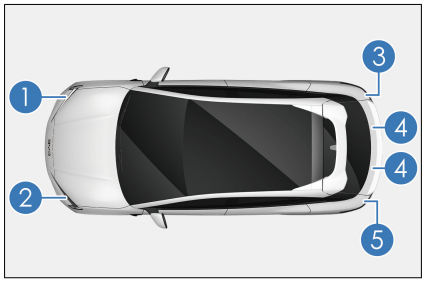
① Front right sensor

② Front left corner sensor

③ Rear right corner sensor

④ Rear left and right middle sensors

⑤ Rear left corner sensor



Distance Display Alarm

When the sensor detects an obstacle, the location of the obstacle and its approximate distance from the vehicle are displayed on the infotainment touchscreen, and the speaker beeps.

Working example of center sensors

Approximate Distance	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm
About 700 to 1,200 mm		Slow
About 400 to 700 mm		Fast
About 200 to 400 mm		Continuous

Working example of corner sensors

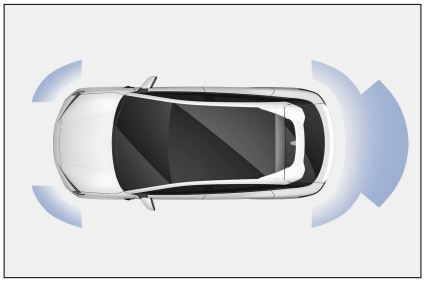
Approximate Distance	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm
About 400 to 600 mm		Fast
About 200 to 400 mm		Continuous

CAUTION

- The system has a blind spot range of 0–200 mm with reduced detection accuracy and less precise alerts. Alerts within 0–200 mm are for reference only.

Working Sensors and Detection Range

- All sensors are activated upon reversing.
- The illustration shows the sensors' detection range. Sensors have a range limitation, so drivers must check the surroundings before slowly reversing the vehicle.



REMINDER

- The parking assist system is only for assistance, and is not a substitute for personal judgment.

REMINDER

Be sure to operate the vehicle based on your observations.

- Sensors will not work properly if accessories or other objects are placed within their detection range.
- In some cases, the system cannot operate properly and will fail to detect certain objects as the vehicle approaches them. Therefore, be sure to observe the vehicle's surroundings at all times. Do not rely solely upon the system.
- Failure of the reversing radar system is indicated by a message on the instrument cluster and a beep, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible in the event of the error message.

Sensor detection information

- Certain vehicle conditions and surroundings may affect the sensors' ability to accurately detect obstacles. Detection accuracy may be affected if:
  - There is dirt, water or fog on the sensor.

- There is snow or frost on the sensor.
- The sensor is masked in any way.
- The vehicle leans significantly to one side or is overloaded.
- The vehicle is moving on particularly bumpy roads, slopes, gravel or grass.
- The sensor has been repainted.
- The vicinity is noisy due to honking of vehicles, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other noises that produce ultrasonic waves.
- There's another vehicle with parking assist system nearby.
- The vehicle is fitted with a tow eye.
- The bumper or the sensor was hit hard.
- The vehicle is approaching a high or zigzag curb.
- The vehicle is driving in the sun or in the cold.
- The vehicle is fitted with non-original suspension that is lower than the original one.

- Except as described above, sensors may not be able to correctly determine the actual distance due to the shape of the object.
- The shape and material of obstacles may prevent sensors from detecting them, especially the following:
  - Electric wires, fences, and ropes
  - Cotton, snow, and other materials that absorb radio waves
  - Any object with sharp edges and corners
  - Low obstacles
  - High obstacles facing outwards towards the vehicle
  - Any object under the bumper
  - Any object close to the vehicle
  - Persons near the vehicle (depending on the type of clothing)
- If an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen or there is a beep, it may be that the sensor detects an obstacle or is interfered. If the issue persists, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

CAUTION

- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not wash the sensor area with water or steam.

Driving Safety Systems

For better driving safety, the following driving safety systems works automatically based on driving conditions. However, these systems only provide assistance, and excessive reliance on them is not recommended.

Intelligent Power Braking System

- The intelligent power braking system is an advanced decoupled electro-hydraulic braking system, incorporating vacuum booster, electronic vacuum pump, and ABS/ESC functionality.
- The system assists vehicle braking according to the driver's demands. It offers advanced control functions such as ABS, electronic brake force distribution (EBD), traction control system (TCS), vehicle dynamic control (VDC), comfort parking (CST), hill-start hold control (HHC), hydraulic brake assist (HBA), and controlled deceleration for parking brake (CDP) to improve vehicle stability and comfort,

and the recovery efficiency of brake energy.

Vehicle dynamics control (VDC)

When the vehicle turns suddenly while running, the VDC system determines the driver's intention based on such information as steering wheel's angle and vehicle speed, and continuously compares with the actual condition. If the vehicle swerves from the normal lane, the VDC corrects the situation by engaging brakes to the corresponding wheels to help the driver control skidding and maintain directional stability.

Traction control system (TCS)

TCS prevents the drive wheels from skidding during acceleration by reducing the motor power, and, when necessary, applies braking forces to prevent drive wheels from spinning. It makes it easy for the vehicle to start, accelerate, and climb under adverse driving conditions.

WARNING

- TCS may not work effectively in the following situations:
  - On slippery roads, even if TCS is working properly, it may not be able to control the direction and meet power requirements.
  - Do not drive in conditions where the vehicle may lose its stability and power.

Hill hold control (HHC)

After the brake pedal is released, HHC maintains brake pressure for one second to prevent backward sliding.

Hydraulic brake assist (HBA)

When you press the brake pedal quickly, HBA detects that the vehicle is in emergency condition. It quickly increases the brake pressure to the maximum so that ABS can intervene more quickly and shorten the braking distance effectively.

Controlled deceleration for parking brake (CDP)

When press and hold the "P" button during driving, CDP starts working so that the vehicle brakes at a constant deceleration (0.4 g if EPB is engaged but the brake pedal is not pressed, and 0.8 g if EPB is engaged and the brake pedal is pressed) until the vehicle stops. CDP stops working when the "P" button released.

Intelligent power braking system has the following new functions compared with the original ESC system:

- Brake assist mode
  - The brake assist mode is used to adjust the brake pedal feel. The relation curve between the brake pedal depth and the vehicle deceleration varies across different modes for the driver to choose their preferred pedal feel.
  - To set the brake assist mode, go to the infotainment touchscreen → → **Vehicle** → **Intelligent Chassis**→ **Brake assist mode**.
- Comfort parking (CST)
  - Comfort parking: When the vehicle decelerates to stop in a non-emergency situation, intelligent power braking system reduces the stop-instant suspension pitch and impact by controlling the brake pressure of the four brakes, and provides a smooth stop feeling.
  - Enable or disable this function in infotainment touchscreen → → **Vehicle** → **Intelligent Chassis** → **Comfort stop**.
  - After the function is triggered, the braking distance may increase by 2-5

cm. Increase the distance from the vehicle or obstacle ahead accordingly before stopping your vehicle.

- Brake disc wiping
  - Brake disc wiping function: When the wiper switch is on or the rain sensor detects rain, the integrated brake control system applies a small brake pressure to all four brakes so that pads come into contact with discs to remove the water film from the discs. This shortens brake response time and braking distance.
  - As long as the system detects rain or the wiper ON signal, the brake discs are repeatedly wiped at certain intervals to improve safety.

Electronic stability control (ESC) instructions

- ESC working
  - If there is a risk of skidding or backsliding when the vehicle starts on a slope, or if either drive wheel is spinning, the ESC indicator flashes to indicate that ESC system is working.
- Disabling ESC
  - If the vehicle gets stuck in snow or mud, ESC may reduce power output from the motor to the wheels. In this case, you may need to turn off the system to get out of the jam.
- Turning off ESC
  - To turn off the ESC system, go to the infotainment touchscreen → → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**. ESC also checks its operating status in real time. If ESC OFF switch is pressed while ESC system is working, the system will complete the active intervention control rather than executes the "shutdown" command immediately. ESC is disabled only after the intervention control is complete.
- Some ESC functions may be re-enabled if you press the ESC OFF switch again or the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold (80 km/h). In order to prevent ESC from being turned off suddenly, ESC can be activated again only when it is not in a vehicle dynamic intervention state.
- Restarting ESC after the motor is powered off
  - When the ESC system is turned off, restarting the motor automatically restarts ESC system.
- ESC start and speed linkage
  - Although already turned off, the ESC system can start on its own if the vehicle becomes extremely unstable as the speed increases and exceeds the threshold of 80 km/h.
- With ESC system activated
  - If the ESC fault indicator flashes, drive with caution.
- With ESC system disabled
  - Be careful when ESC is disabled, and drive at speeds suitable for road conditions. The ESC system ensures vehicle stability and its driving force. Never turn it off unless necessary.
- Replacing tires
  - Make sure all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern, and total load. In addition, be sure to inflate tires to the recommended pressure.
  - Neither ABS nor ESC will work properly if the vehicle is fitted with different tires.
  - For details on tire or wheel replacement, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Tire and suspension handling

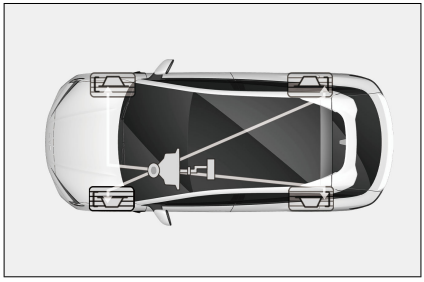
- The use of any defective tire or modified suspension affects the driving safety system and may cause the system to fail.

Multi-collision braking (MCB)

- If an accident requires airbags activation, the vehicle engages automatic braking.
- Speed reduction, along with intervention by additional driving systems (ESC and ABS), assists the vehicle to maintain stability and lane position.
- Hazard and brake lights also light up to alert oncoming traffic and prevent further collisions.
- To support emergency service rescue and vehicle recovery, brakes will release and brake lights will go off after the accident.
- The driver can interrupt the multi-collision braking at any time by accelerating or braking.

Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)

- The ABS hydraulic system has two separate circuits, each running diagonally through the vehicle (left front wheel brake connected to the right rear wheel brake). If one circuit fails, two wheels can still be braked.



- ABS helps maintain the steering control by preventing the wheels from locking or skidding when brake is engaged suddenly or on slippery roads.
- When the front tires skid, there is no steering control, which means that the vehicle still moves forward even though the steering wheel is turned. ABS helps prevent locking and maintain steering control since pulsating prompt brake is much faster than human reaction.
- Never pulsate the brake pedal; otherwise, ABS may malfunction. While steering away from danger, a firm and steady pressure should always be maintained on the brake pedal for the ABS to work.
- When the ABS is working, the brake pedal will vibrate, which may produce noise. This is normal because ABS is pulsating the brake quickly.

Electronic brake force distribution (EBD)

- The EBD is an auxiliary function of ABS. Before ABS acts, if the skid rate of rear wheel is high, ABS adjusts the brake pressure of rear wheel for a smoother and more ideal brake force distribution.

WARNING

- ABS cannot work effectively under the following conditions:
  - Tires with inadequate grip are used (for example, excessively worn tires used on snow-covered roads).
  - The vehicle skids when driving at a high speed on slippery roads.
- ABS is not designed to reduce the braking distance of the vehicle.

WARNING

Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead on:

- Driving on slippery, muddy, sandy or snowy roads.
- Driving on roads with multiple potholes or on uneven roads.
- Driving on bumpy roads.

CAUTION

- If the ABS fault warning light is still on while the braking system warning light is on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.
- ABS does not reduce the time and distance required to stop the vehicle. This system only helps you control steering when braking. Always keep a safe distance from other vehicles.
- ABS cannot prevent skidding caused by sudden direction change, such as trying to make a sharp turn or change lanes suddenly. Always drive carefully at a safe speed, regardless of road and weather conditions.
- ABS does not prevent decrease in stability either. When applying the brake in an emergency, the steering should be moderate. A large or sharp turn during the driving can cause the vehicle to swerve into oncoming traffic or run off the road.
- When driving on wet or soft or uneven roads (such as

CAUTION

waterlogged concrete roads, waterlogged epoxy painted roads, sandy roads, snowy roads), vehicles equipped with ABS may require longer braking distances than vehicles without ABS. In such cases, reduce the vehicle speed and keep a greater distance from other vehicles.

Intelligence Torque Adaption Control (iTAC) System*

- The intelligent torque adaption control (iTAC) system employs a unique control architecture and algorithm that evaluates data including steering angle and motor speed and thus identifies the driver's driving needs and vehicle status. It proactively adjusts the drive torque of the front and rear axles in real time so that the driving state of the vehicle adapts to the driver's needs with better performance in complex road conditions.
- When the wheels show signs of slipping, iTAC allocates the drive torque rapidly to ensure the stability of the vehicle torque, ensuring that the vehicle remains responsive and capable in diverse road conditions.
- Enable or disable this function in infotainment touchscreen → → **Energy** → **iTAC**.

WARNING

- This function is not designed for unbridled driving. Make sure the braking system works normally in the following situations:

WARNING

- Unbridled driving behaviors such as drifting, and driving on continuous bends.
- Muddy, sandy, or snowy roads.
- Roads with potholes or uneven roads.
- Bumpy roads.

REMINDER

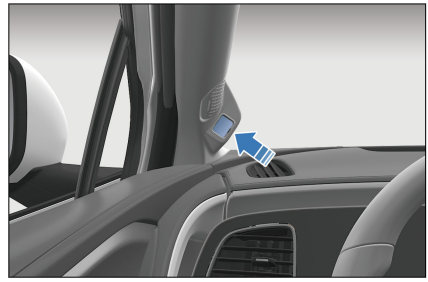
- When braking is detected, be it through the driver pressing the brake pedal or ESC coming into action, iTAC exits for the priority of braking.

Driver Monitoring Systems (DMS)

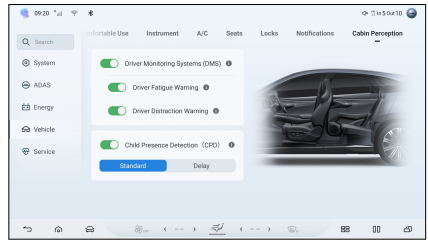
Driver monitoring systems (DMS), including fatigue and distraction monitoring, is designed to monitor the driver's driving status with a camera and assess it. Based on the assessment, the system alerts the driver in a timely manner. The monitoring data will not be saved or uploaded to the server but instead will be deleted immediately after the assessment is complete.

How to Use

- The camera for DMS is mounted on the A-pillar of the driver side. Make sure it is unobstructed before use, or DMS may not function normally.



- To enable or disable driver fatigue or distraction warning (both enabled by factory default), go to infotainment touchscreen → → **Vehicle** → **Cabin Perception**.



- When the system sounds a fatigue or distraction warning, pressing the scroll button on the steering wheel pauses the warning for 15 minutes, during which no warnings will be given.

Driver fatigue warning

- With the vehicle speed meeting the system activation condition, driver fatigue warning enabled and the camera unobstructed, when the system detects signs of fatigue, such as closing eyes, blinking and yawning, it alerts the driver through a visual warning on the instrument cluster, voice assistant, or an audible alarm.

Driver distraction warning

- With the vehicle speed meeting the system activation condition, driver distraction warning enabled and the camera unobstructed, when the system detects signs of distraction,

such as looking at side mirrors, it alerts the driver promptly through a visual warning on the instrument cluster, voice assistant, or an audible alarm.

REMINDER

- Clean the DMS camera lens with a clean and soft cloth and exercise caution to prevent any damage to the surface.

Precautions

- The driver monitoring system is only an auxiliary system and is not capable of effective recognition and alarm-raising in all situations. It cannot completely replace the driver's subjective observation and judgment. The driver must maintain control of the vehicle at all times, complying with all road laws and regulations, and taking full responsibility for the vehicle.
- The proper functioning and accuracy of the driver monitoring assistance can be affected by a number of situations, including but not limited to:
  - Driver monitoring assistance is disabled.
  - The camera is directly exposed to strong light.
  - Part of the driver's face is exposed to light or the complete facial features are hard to recognize.
  - The driver wears infrared-blocking glasses or glasses with thick lenses.
  - The driver wears a mask or something that covers the face.
  - The driver is not properly seated or the driver's face is in the blind spot of the camera.

WARNING

- The driver should pull over as soon as possible when feeling tired.

Child Presence Detection (CPD)*

After the vehicle is powered off and the doors are closed or locked, child presence detection (CDP), as an auxiliary reminder function, is performed to detects life presence inside the vehicle. If life presence is detected, a reminder is given in the form of light flashing and honking. The A/C will be switched on soon after. Open any door to cancel the reminder.

How to Use

- To access the CPD setting interface, go to infotainment touchscreen → **Vehicle** → **Cabin Perception**. Four options are provided: OFF, ON, Standard, and Delay.
- By default, CPD is enabled with standard mode each time when the vehicle is powered on*.
- Tap Delay to extend the reminder for 5 minutes for this trip.

System Response

- When CPD enabled with standard mode, if life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered off and locked, the initial reminder (light flashing and honking) starts within 10 seconds and will last for about 6 seconds.
- When CPD is enabled with standard alert mode, if life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered off but unlocked, the initial alarm (light

flashing and honking) starts within 5 minutes and will last for about 6 seconds.

- When CPD is enabled with delay mode, if life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered off and the doors are closed, the initial reminder (light flashing and honking) starts within 5 minutes and will last for about 6 seconds.
- If the reminder is not canceled, the reminder will be upgraded in 90 seconds (light flashing and honking) and will last for 25 minutes.
- The A/C will be switched on three minutes after reminder escalation, and will keep running for about 30 minutes.
- To cancel the reminder, tap the button on the infotainment touchscreen, unlock the vehicle, or open any door.
- You will receive messages in the BYD app and email of every initial reminder, reminder escalation and other system responses.

WARNING

- While light flashing, honking, app message prompts, email message, and A/C operation reduce the harm to the child(ren) in the vehicle, they cannot completely prevent harms.
- When a reminder is provided, check whether any child has been locked inside the vehicle promptly to avoid further harms.
- CPD is only an auxiliary system and may not reliably detect or issue reminders in all circumstances. The user must remain alert at all times and fully responsible for the lives in the vehicle.

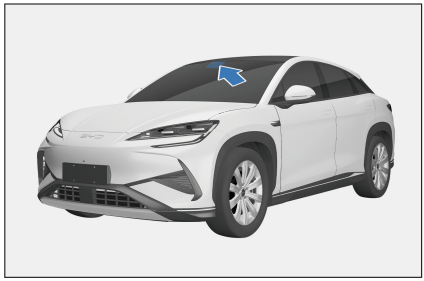
CAUTION

- The system may misidentify adults, pets, or other lives as children and give false reminder.
- The reminder cannot be canceled by unlocking the vehicle from the app.
- The system may not be able to issue a reminder or turn on the A/C if the SOC is low. Keeping the vehicle at a high SOC is recommended.

Other Main Functions

Dashcam*

- The camera is located at the upper center of the front windshield.



CAUTION

- For storage card requirements and instructions on inserting the card, refer to ***P194***.
- Detailed features and disclaimers can be found in the Dashcam app.

CAUTION

- Due to variations in vehicle configurations, the exact features of the dashcam may vary.
- You are responsible for complying with all laws and regulations regarding the use of cameras in your country or region, in particular those about privacy protection.
- While driving, the dashcam records video footage of the area surrounding the vehicle. To protect your privacy, the recorded video is stored in the vehicle's internal memory. BYD does not collect or process your video data.

Real-Time Image

- To enable or disable the dashcam, go to the infotainment touchscreen→ → **Dashcam**.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- The dashcam interfaces include "Real-Time Image", "Playback List" and "Settings", allowing you to view and set dashcam information.

Control buttons

: Start recording

: Pause recording

: Take a photo

: Lock the current video or start emergency recording

Operation status

: Recording in progress

: Dashcam malfunction

: TF card detected, but not recording

: TF card not detected (card not inserted or faulty)

Playback list screen:

- The playback list includes driving videos, locked videos, and photos.

Settings screen:

- Tap **Recording Duration** to select the recording length between 40 seconds, 2 minutes, or 5 minutes.
- Tap **Overlay Driving Info on Video** to display driving information over the dashcam footage.
- Tap **Delete Data** to clear all data in the general video file folder of the dashcam.
- Tap **Format SD Card** to clear all data and formats the card to FAT32.

05 IN-VEHICLE DEVICES

Infotainment System.....178
A/C System.....183
BYD App.....189
Storage.....190
Other Devices.....192

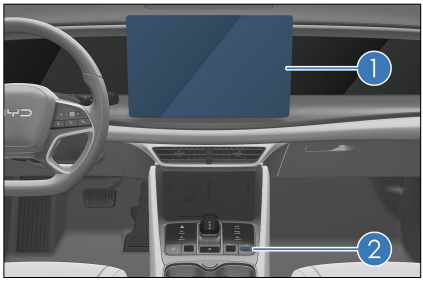
Infotainment System

Infotainment Touchscreen

When the ignition is on, the initial screen is displayed for several seconds and the infotainment system starts to work. To better experience infotainment functions, such as apps and Internet calls, the system must be used after network connection.

① Infotainment touchscreen

② Scroll button



- Scroll the button up to turn volume up or down to turn volume down. Volume ranges from 0 to 39. A mute icon is displayed when volume is 0.
- With the infotainment system on, press the scroll button to mute the sound and enter the screen saver interface or turn off the screen (set the screen saver through the infotainment touchscreen → → **System** → **Display**). Press the scroll button again to turn off the mute and turn on the screen.
- Press and hold the scroll button for three seconds to restart the infotainment system.

Reset to factory settings

- Reset to factory settings on the infotainment system by tapping → **System** → **Version** → **Factory reset** → **Restore**.
- This function factory resets the infotainment system.
  - During the process, do not touch any infotainment button or turn off the power supply, or errors may occur.
  - The process takes 2-5 minutes.

WARNING

- Do not use a high-power inverter in the vehicle, as this may cause infotainment system malfunction.
- Do not format or root the device, as this may cause infotainment system or vehicle malfunction.
- For driving safety, it is recommended to use the infotainment system in landscape mode while driving.

CAUTION

- To prevent damage to the touchscreen:
  - Touch the screen gently. If there is no response, remove fingers from the screen, then touch it again.
  - Clean the screen with a soft cloth. Do not use any cleaning product.
- Using the touchscreen
  - When the screen temperature is low, the image displayed may be darker or the system may work slightly slower than normal.
  - The screen may be dark or difficult to see when you are

CAUTION

wearing sunglasses. In that case, change the viewing angle or take off the sunglasses.

- Touchscreen buttons that are grayed out cannot be operated.

- The touchscreen interface shown here is for reference only.

Navigation Bar

: returns to the previous screen or exits the program.

: returns to the homepage.

: goes to the setting screen.

: goes to the app list screen.

: splits screen if applications support.

*: switches between the landscape and portrait mode of the infotainment touchscreen.

: goes to the A/C settings screen.

REMINDER

- The shortcut menu on your vehicle may be different.

Gestures and Responses

Gestures and associated system responses are:

- Tapping: opens applications, selects functions, clicks icons on the touchscreen, or types characters.
- Dragging: touching and dragging an icon, thumbnail, or preview to the target position to change its location.
- Swiping: operational on homepage and app screens.
- Double-tapping: zooms in an image. Double-tap again to return.
- Spreading/Pinching: zooms in or out an image with two fingers.
- Swiping left/right with three fingers: regulates A/C fan speed.
- Swiping up/down with three fingers: regulates A/C temperature.
- Swiping down from the top of the touchscreen: opens the shortcut menu.
- Swiping up from the bottom of the touchscreen: opens the task management center.
- Sliding from the left/right of the touchscreen: returns to the last screen.

OTA Update

- The vehicle supports over-the-air (OTA) update. You can update the infotainment system by tapping → **System** → **Version**→ **Vehicle Version** → **Upgrade**.
- When available, new updates are prompted on the infotainment touchscreen. You can update it immediately, schedule an update, or update it by mobile phone (if supported) based on your vehicle usage.

CAUTION

- Do not move the vehicle during the update.
- Before the update, ensure that the vehicle is parked safely in Park gear with a stable network connection.

CAUTION

- Ensure the vehicle has a high SOC before starting the update.
- Do not install any third-party devices in the OBD port before or during the update.
- Make sure the vehicle has enough battery power before the update, as it cannot be charged or discharged during the process.
- During the update, vehicle functions are not available except the following : locking/unlocking with smart key or microswitch, interior lights, hazard warning light, and window controls.
- If the update fails, try again. If the retry fails, contact BYD customer service or a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for assistance.

BYD Assistant

BYD Assistant is an intelligent voice assistant that responds to your voice commands, such as requesting navigation, playing music/radio, making a phone call, and controlling in-vehicle devices.

- Waking up BYD Assistant:
  - On the steering wheel, press the button.
  - On the infotainment touchscreen, tap .
  - Say the wake-up word "Hi, BYD".
- After waking up BYD Assistant, follow the prompts displayed on the infotainment touchscreen to issue voice commands.

Bluetooth

Bluetooth connection

1. On Bluetooth Call screen, tap **Please connect Bluetooth** to establish connection.
2. Tap **Available devices** to search.
3. Pair the available device, and make sure the paring code displayed on your phone is consistent with the code on the touchscreen.
4. Set Bluetooth when connection is complete.

Bluetooth call

Go to the dialing screen when Bluetooth is connected.

- Tap **Contacts**, **Call log**, and **Missed calls**, or use dial keypad to make a call.
- Slide the call card upwards or tap any empty space to minimize the dialing screen.

Speakers

- The vehicle is equipped with Dynaudio and you can set Dynaudio sound field focus, Dynaudio sound features and volume adjusted with speed on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **Vehicle** → **Audio**.

Dynaudio sound field focus

- This feature allows for selecting sound field focus including the entire cabin, the driver's seat, the front passenger's seat, the rear seats, the surrounding space, or a customized area. The sound focus technology crafts a balanced sound environment for passengers.

Dynaudio sound features

- This feature offers five modes: acoustic, dynamic, soft, speech, and customize, catering to a range of auditory preferences.

Volume adjusted with speed

- When the function is enabled, it will adaptively adjust the sense of hearing and reduce the impact of environmental noises of road, tire, wind and so on. It can be set between 0–7, where 0 means turning off and 1–7 are the setting levels. The higher the value, the more the volume is adjusted. The default set value is 4.

File Management

New folder

- Go to file management screen to create new folders. You can enter the folder name and tap **OK** or **Cancel** to perform actions.
- Tap the top of the file management screen to change file sources.

Search

- Tap **Search** on the upper left corner and enter file names to search for target files.

Cut/Copy

- Tap and hold any file, select target files and operation (copy, move, or delete), and then go to the edit status.

Rename

- Tap and hold any file, select Rename in dialog displayed, rename the selected file, and then tap **OK**.

Delete

- Tap and hold any file and then tap **Delete**.

Sort

- Files are sorted by name by default. You can also sort them by size, type, or time.

Attributes

- Tap and hold any file and then tap **Details** to check its attributes.

Phone Projection

Phone projection allows you to connect a smartphone to the vehicle and interact with certain mobile apps on the infotainment touchscreen.

WARNING

- Drive safely. Avoid any possible distractions, or accidents could result.

REMINDER

- Make sure the vehicle is in Park with the infotainment system turned on, and allow time to set up the phone projection app before you start your drive.
- The initial setup process must be completed on the phone: check prompts on the phone for security information, accept privacy policies, and grant necessary permissions.
- The first time you connect wirelessly, you will need to pair your phone and the vehicle via Bluetooth. For best results, keep your phone's Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and Location Services turned on while you complete the setup.
- Ensure your phone is in range of your mobile data network and has an active data plan.

REMINDER

- Availability of services whose names or logos are shown varies by country and language, and subscriptions for services may be required.

Apple CarPlay

- Connecting with a cable
  - Plug an iPhone to a USB data transfer port on the vehicle with a certified USB cable. Apple CarPlay is then connected.
- Connecting wirelessly
  1. Go to infotainment touchscreen → application screen, tap the Apple CarPlay icon , and pair your iPhone to the vehicle as prompted.
  2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Apple CarPlay.
- Switching between Apple CarPlay and in-vehicle infotainment system
  - To exit Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the BYD icon on this interface, or or in the shortcut bar.
  - To access the Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the Apple CarPlay icon on the infotainment system's application screen.
- For available regions of Apple CarPlay, visit https://www.apple.com/ios/feature-availability/#apple-carplay.

Android Auto

- Connecting with a cable
  1. Plug a smartphone to a USB data transfer port on the vehicle with a certified USB cable.
  2. Follow the on-screen instructions to set up Android Auto.
- Connecting wirelessly
  1. Go to infotainment touchscreen → application screen, tap the Android Auto icon , and pair your smartphone to the vehicle as prompted.
  2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Android Auto.
- Switching between Android Auto and in-vehicle infotainment system
  - To exit Android Auto user interface, tap on this interface, or or in the shortcut bar.
  - To access Android Auto user interface, tap the Android Auto icon on the infotainment system's application screen.
- To use Android Auto on the infotainment touchscreen, you need a compatible Android smartphone. You can check the list of compatible smartphones at g.co/androidauto/requirements undefined.

REMINDER

- Android Auto is integrated into phones with Android 10 and above. You do not need to download it.
- For wired or wireless connection, your phone might ask you to update Android Auto before you continue.

Trademark statement

- Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.

- Android and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.

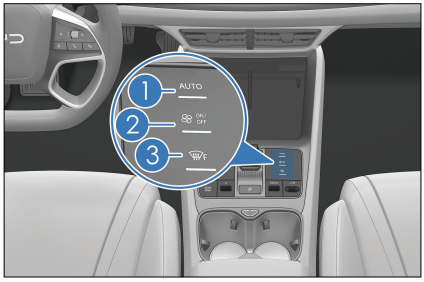
A/C System

A/C Buttons

① A/C auto mode

② A/C ON/OFF

③ Front windshield defroster



A/C Operation Interface

A/C Settings Interface

- To access the A/C setting interface, go to infotainment touchscreen → **Vehicle** → **A/C**.

① A/C Auto Mode

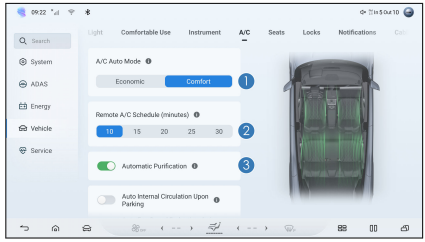
- Two options are available: Economic and Comfort.

② Remotely A/C Schedule

- Set the time for remote A/C running.

③ Automatic Purification

- Enable or disable auto purification.

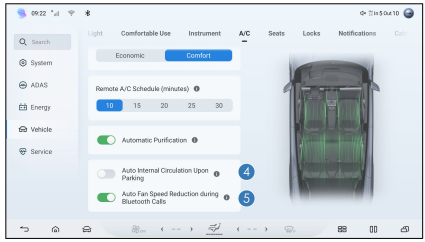


④ Auto Internal Circulation upon Parking

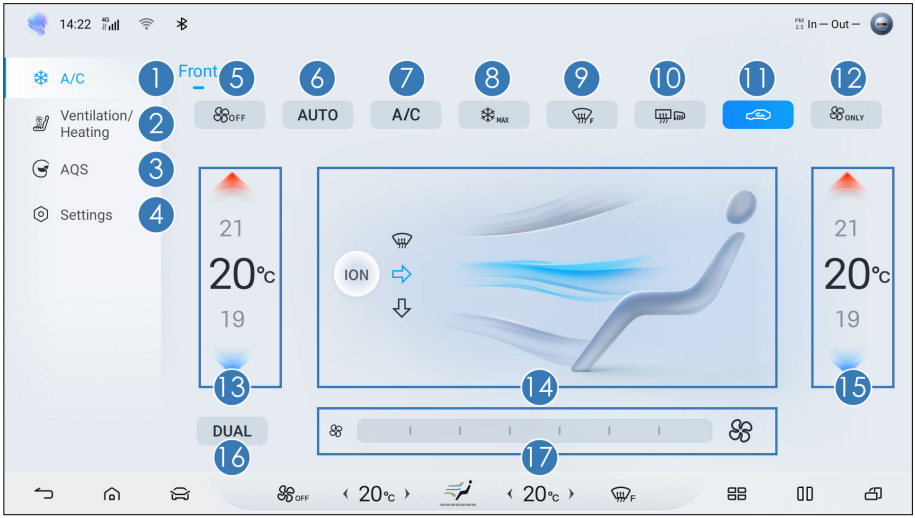
- Enable or disable auto internal recirculation upon parking.

⑤ Auto Fan Speed Reduction during Bluetooth Calls

- Enable or disable auto fan speed reduction during Bluetooth calls.



A/C Operation Interface



1 A/C operation interface

2 Ventilation/Heating

3 Air purification

4 A/C setting

5 A/C ON/OFF

6 Auto mode

7 A/C button

8 Max cooling

9 Front windshield defroster

10 Defroster for rear windshield and side mirrors

11 Circulation mode

12 Ventilation

13 Driver's temperature control

14 Air distribution

15 Front passenger's temperature control

16 DUAL

17 Fan speed control

REMINDER

- A/C odor:
  - It is normal that there may be a damp and moldy smell just after the A/C is turned on. During the operation of the automobile A/C, A/C condensation often remains in the evaporator, and the wet evaporator can easily absorb unfiltered body sweat, smokes, etc., inside the vehicle. Condensation not blown dry makes the dark and damp evaporator surface prone to mold, which is very likely to produce unpleasant odors by long-term fermentation.
- How to prevent A/C odors:

REMINDER

- Turn off the A/C and ventilate with natural air before parking to keep the air inside the vehicle relatively dry.
- Inspect, clean, or replace the filter regularly.
- Try to keep the cabin clean and fresh.

- If the odor persists after odor prevention methods are used, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.

Function Definition

A/C ON/OFF

- Tap this button to disable the A/C if it is ON.
- With the A/C turned off, tap to turn on the A/C in the memorized modes, with the last set temperature, fan speed and air outlet mode.

Auto mode

- Tap the auto button, its indicator lights up on the front A/C panel and the auto mode is activated with the fan speed and air distribution being adjusted automatically.
- The vehicle exits auto control if fan speed or air distribution is set, and other functions remain in auto mode except for those that have been operated.

A/C button(cooling/heating)

- Tap this button to turn on the A/C (cooling/heating), the icon lights up and cooling or heating begins. Tap this button again to turn off the A/C compressor. The icon goes out and the compressor stops working.

Max cooling

- Tap this button to switch the A/C to the maximum cooling control mode. The temperature is set to "Lo", the fan speed is set to the maximum, the recirculation mode is activated, and air is directed to face level. Tap this button again to enter AUTO mode.

Front windshield defroster

- Tap this button to enter the front windshield defrost mode which distributes air to the front windshield. The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel lights up.
- Tap this button again to deactivate and exit the front windshield defrost mode. The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel turns off.

Defroster for rear windshield and side mirrors

- Tap this button, and the heating panel of side mirrors will quickly clear the mirrors. The function is automatically deactivated after 15-minute inactivity of the associated button.
- Tap this button again to disable the function.
- This function is not to be used to dry raindrops or melt snow.

WARNING

- Do not touch the side mirrors when the defroster is activated, because their surfaces will be hot.

CAUTION

- Using the side mirror electric heating defrosting function for a long time may cause the mirror

CAUTION

to wear out faster. Turn off the defrost button when it is not needed.

Ventilation

- Tap this button to activate A/C ventilation control. The outlet air is natural air, and the fan speed is level one by default without cooling or heating function. Tap this button again to exit.

Temperature controls

- Driver's temperature control
  - In the individual mode: temperature control for the driver.
  - In the relative mode: temperature control for the driver and front passenger.
  - To increase/decrease the temperature, tap the upper/lower arrow on the screen, or touch the temperature display area and then swipe downwards/upwards.
- Front passenger's temperature control
  - In the individual mode: temperature regulation for the front passenger.
  - In the relative mode: after the temperature is adjusted for the front passenger, the A/C system will automatically switch to the individual mode.
  - To increase/decrease the temperature, tap the upper/lower arrow on the screen, or touch the temperature display area and then swipe downwards/upwards.
  - "Lo"/"Hi" is displayed when the temperature is set to the lowest/highest value.

Fan speed control

- Tap the suitable fan speed level button to set the speed at a desired level. A higher level indicates a higher fan speed and airflow.

DUAL

- Tap this button to switch from individual mode to relative mode.
  - Individual mode: The temperature of the driver's side and front passenger's side can be set separately. The button icon will be lighted after the individual mode is selected.
  - Relative mode: Adjust the temperature of the driver's side and the front passenger's side at the same time by the driver's side temperature control. The button icon is gray in the relative mode.
- When the front passenger's temperature control is operated in relative mode, the A/C system will automatically switch to individual mode.

Circulation mode

- Tap this button and then 

  is displayed, indicating that the circulation mode is recirculation.
- Tap this button for the second time and then  is displayed, indicating that the circulation mode is fresh air mode.

Air distribution

- Tap an icon of A/C system on the infotainment touchscreen to select the corresponding air distribution mode.
- You can turn on multiple air distribution modes at a time (up to three).
- Adjustments can be made according to the air supply illustration.

Blowing face : Air flows to the face level.

Blowing legs : Air flows to the foot level.

Defrost : Air flows to the front windshield and side windows.



Intelligent A/C ON Method

Remote activation with smart key

- Turn on the A/C using the smart key from a short distance, creating a comfortable vehicle interior environment in advance.

Voice control

- Control the A/C settings by pressing the voice button on the steering wheel or by saying "Hi, BYD".

Bluetooth activation

- Turn on the A/C from a short distance on the BYD app through Bluetooth, creating a comfortable interior environment in advance.

Cloud service activation

- Turn on the A/C remotely on the BYD app through Cloud Service, creating a comfortable interior environment in advance.

Usage Precautions

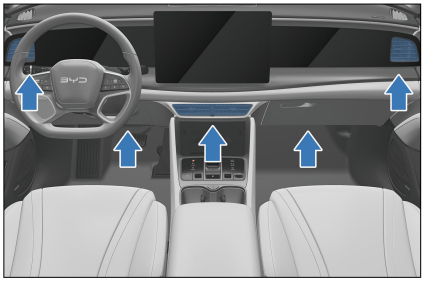
- To quickly cool down the interior after long exposure to sunlight, drive for a few minutes with the windows open to exhaust hot air and speed up A/C cooling.
- Make sure that the air intake grille in front of the windshield is not blocked by, for example, leaves or snow.
- Avoid blowing cool air onto the windshield in humid weather. The inner and outer temperature difference can cause glass fogging.
- Keep the space under the front seats clear to improve air circulation.
- In cold weather, run the fan at high speed for one minute to remove snow or moisture from the intake passage and reduce fogging.
- In dusty or windy driving conditions, close all windows, If the dust raised by other vehicles still enters the vehicle even if all windows are closed, it is recommended to set the air intake mode as recirculation mode and set the fan speed at any position other than "0".
- To speed up cooling, adjust the temperature to "Lo" and use the recirculation mode for a few minutes.
- Use recirculation mode for a few minutes for quick heating in cold weather, and switch to fresh air mode to prevent fogging after the cabin is heated up.
- In heating mode, press the compressor control button to light up the button, which can reduce airflow moisture.
- In the ventilation mode, the system brings in natural ourside air, suitable for use in spring and autumn.

Vents

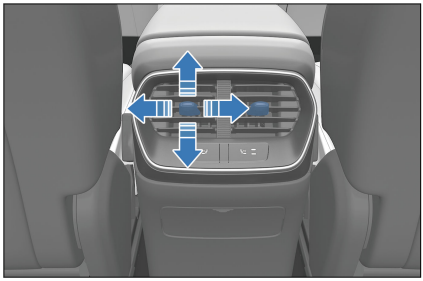
- Toggle the slat up or down to adjust the outlet angle of air flow.

- Slide the slat left or right to adjust the outlet angle of air flow or open/close the vent.

Front vents



Rear vents



Air Purification System*

The air purification system purifies airborne PM2.5 particles. When A/C is turned on, the system thoroughly removes PM2.5 particles from the air blown into the cabin.

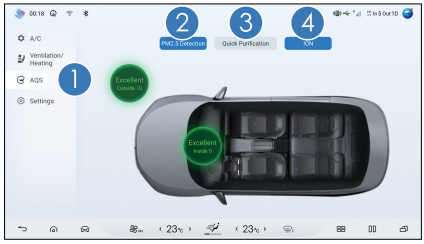
Air purification operation interface

① Air purification button

② PM2.5 detection

③ Quick purification

④ ION



PM2.5 detection

- Tap this button to detect interior and exterior air quality. The detection values and levels are displayed on the infotainment touchscreen in real time. Tap this button again to turn off PM2.5 detection.

Quick purification

- Tap this button to activate quick purification and tap a second time to disable it.

ION

- Tap this button to activate the anion generator. Tap a second time to deactivate it.

REMINDER

- The PM2.5 value detected by the on-board air purification (PM2.5) detector is the PM2.5 value in the air near the vehicle carrying the device in a short time, which should be different from the daily or real-time PM2.5 value declared by national and relevant government authorities.
- Reduce the frequency of PM2.5 detection in the following environments:
  - Sandstorms and other extremely harsh environments.
  - Cold regions (with ambient temperature below -20°C).

REMINDER

- High humidity environments (relative humidity >90%).
- Temperature fluctuating environments (prone to condensation), such as driving from cold environments to warmer indoor areas or car parks.

- Running maximum air flow speed in recirculation mode can quickly reduce the concentration of fine particles in the air inside the vehicle.
- In order to reduce odors from the A/C, if the A/C is already turned on, the A/C fans may keep running for a while after you power off and lock the vehicle. The main purpose is to blow dry the condensed water on the surface of the evaporator to prevent mold fermentation. It is normal for the A/C fans to automatically start running when you lock the vehicle. No need to worry about it.

BYD App

About BYD App

- BYD app is a mobile application of Internet of Vehicle (IoV) independently developed by BYD. It allows you to control the vehicle remotely and check vehicle conditions, delivering cloud era experience of IoV.
- Search for "BYD" in Google Play or App Store to download and install BYD app.

Account Registration

Once the app is installed, follow the on-screen instructions or the steps below to sign up and log in.

1. Open the app, and then tap **Sign up** to go to the registration screen.
2. Enter email address registered in BYD authorized dealer, tap **Send email** to receive verification code, and then enter the code in the app.
3. Set your password in password setting screen to complete the registration, and then the homepage is displayed.

CAUTION

- Provide the email address registered at the BYD authorized dealer, or registration will fail.
- In the app, select a country or region on upper right corner of the screen. The default setting depends on your phone setting. If it is not where you make the purchase, choose the right one, otherwise your data will not be accessible.

Vehicle Condition and Control

The BYD app homepage provides information and control items of the vehicle.

1. The homepage shows remaining driving range, SOC, possible vehicle error information, and status of vehicle driving, charging, A/C system, seat heater, and tire pressure.
2. Tap the lock, unlock, light flashing and honking, or light flashing button to activate the corresponding function.

3. Turn on or off A/C on the app homepage, or tap the A/C card to perform other settings.
4. At the bottom of the homepage, tap the icon of seats, doors and windows, or tires to go to the associated screen and check their status.
5. If you have multiple vehicles on an account, tap the vehicle name in the upper left corner of the screen to switch between vehicles.

CAUTION

- The control function of the app is mainly for remote use. To use this function, ensure your phone and vehicle are connected to the Internet.

Individual Center and Vehicle Management

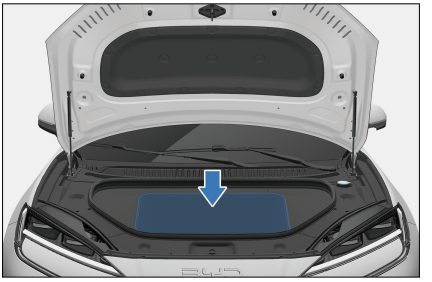
Tap **My Account** to go to the individual center.

- Tap the icon on the top right corner of the vehicle card to edit the vehicle name and license plate number.
- **Account and Security**: recovers or changes your password.
- **Settings**: sets message reception, automatic login, and other items.
- **About Us**: includes privacy policy and information to contact us and give feedback.

Storage

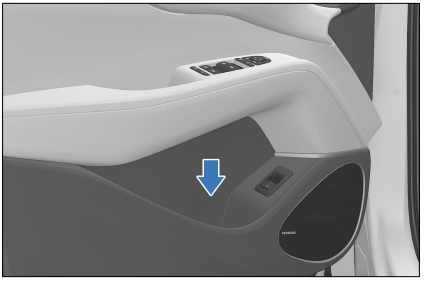
Engine Compartment Storage

- Open the hood to use the engine compartment storage.



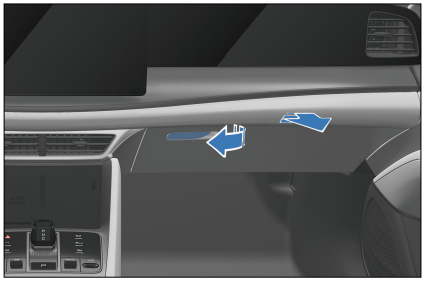
Door Bins

- There is a door bin on each door for storage of beverage bottles or small items.



Glove Box

- Pull to open the glove box.
- Push the lid up to close it.



REMINDER

- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking, keep the glove box closed while driving.

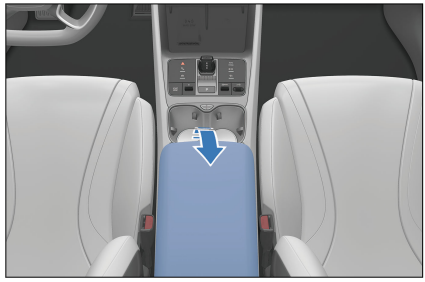
Center Console Storage Compartment

- The center console storage compartment can be used for storage of small items.



Cubby Box

- Pull up the front of the cubby box to open it.



REMINDER

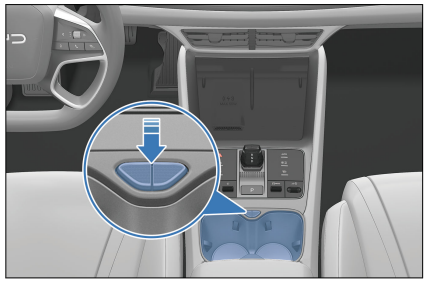
- Keep the cubby box closed while the vehicle is in motion.

Cup Holders

Front Seat Cup Holders

Front liftable cup holder

- Lowering: press the cup or directly press the bottom of the cup holder to lower it by 98 mm.
- Rising: press the unlock button to rise the cup holder to the initial position.



Rear Seat Cup Holders

1. Flip the rear seat armrest.
2. Tap the cup holder cover to let it open automatically.

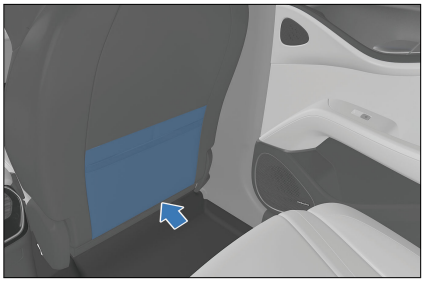


CAUTION

- Do not start or brake the vehicle suddenly when the cup holders are being used to prevent spillage or scalding.
- Do not place an open cup or loose beverage bottle in the cup holder, so as to avoid liquid spillage while you are driving, opening or closing a door.
- To ensure safe driving, the driver is strictly prohibited from taking the cup out or placing it in the cup holder while driving.
- Please keep the inside of the cup holder clean and free of debris, such as sand, leaves, and peanut shells.

Seatback Pockets

- There are seatback pockets at the back of the front seats for magazines, newspapers and phones.

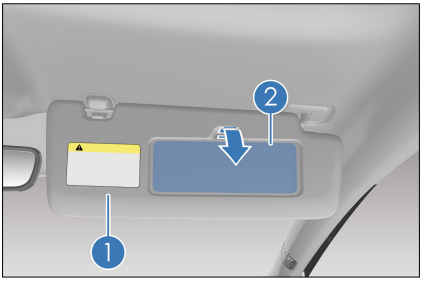


Other Devices

Sun Visor

① Sun visor

- To block sunlight from the front, pull the sun visor down.
- To block sunlight from a side, remove the swivel sleeve from the fixed support and turn the visor towards the side window.



② Vanity mirror

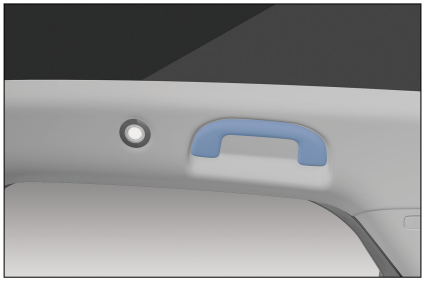
- Flip down the sun visor and the mirror cover for use.

REMINDER

- Correct use of the sun visor improves driving safety and comfort.

Grab Handles

- Pull the grab handle down for use. The handle returns to its original position when released.

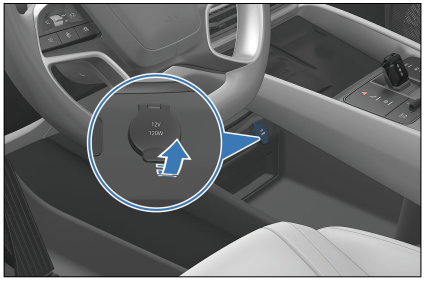


CAUTION

- Do not hang any heavy objects from the grab handles.

12V Auxiliary Power

- It is used for accessories with 12 V DC working voltage and no more than 10A working current.
- The 12 V auxiliary power is available only when the ignition has been switched on. Lift the cover to use it.



CAUTION

- To prevent fuses from blowing, the power consumption must not exceed 12 V/120 W of total vehicle load.
- To prevent draining the low-voltage battery, do not use the 12 V auxiliary power supply for a long time when the drive motor is not running.

CAUTION

- When the 12 V auxiliary power is not in use, close its cover. Do not insert any object other than a suitable plug into the 12 V auxiliary power socket or let any liquid ingress the socket, as electrical failure may result.

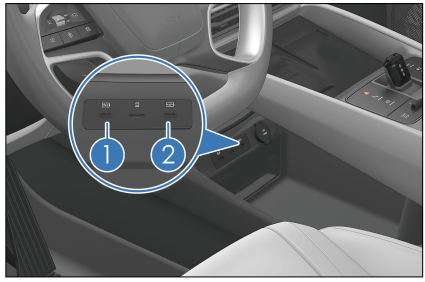
USB Ports

Front-row USB ports

- They are located at the hollowed-out part below the auxiliary dashboard.

  ① Type-C fast charge port

  ② Type-C data transmission port



CAUTION

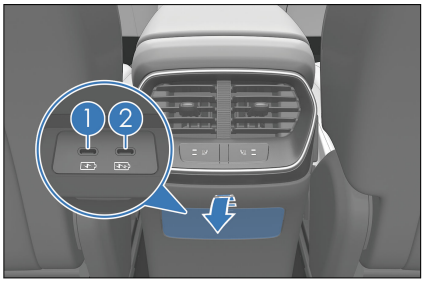
- It is recommended to use a USB storage device with a capacity of 8 to 128GB, formatted in FAT32, ExFAT and NTFS.
- Do not use USB storage devices of special categories to prevent damage to the infotainment system or data in the USB device.

Rear-row USB ports

- The rear USB ports are located behind the cubby box, and can be opened by pressing the protective cover.

① Type-C charge port

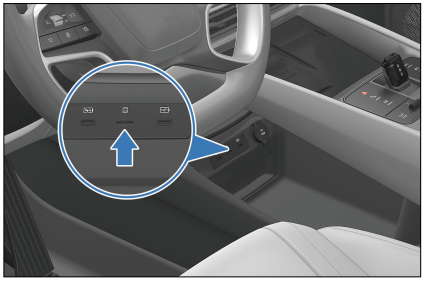
② Type-C fast charge port



- The power outlet can be used only when the ignition is on.

SD Card Slot

- An SD card slot is located at the hollowed-out part below the auxiliary dashboard.



- The infotainment system supports TF card (also called Micro-SD card) ranging from 64 to 128GB with a Class 10 speed rating or higher.

CAUTION

- Insert the card correctly.
- When the card is inserted, a red flashing dot on the driving recorder's interface* indicates successful recognition and normal operation. Any issue with card recognition or video recording prompts corresponding notifications on the infotainment touchscreen.
- Incompatible TF cards may result in failure to write and save files.
- Format non-FAT32 cards before using them, or the system may fail to recognize them.
- Before removing the TF card, stop recording or shut down the infotainment system, or video files may be damaged.

Wireless Phone Charger

- The wireless phone charging area is located at the front of the center console cubby. When the ignition is on, put the phone on the wireless charging area with the phone screen facing up. Wireless charging automatically begins, and a charging icon is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen.
- To enable or disable wireless charging, go to the drop-down shortcut menu on the infotainment touchscreen, and tap in the **Vehicle Control** column.



- The wireless charger only works with Qi-certified phones.

- Wireless phone charging uses a coil to transmit electrical energy to a phone battery through electromagnetic wave induction so that the phone can be charged without a cable connection.

CAUTION

- Ensure your smart key is more than 25 cm away from the wireless charger area when the wireless charger system is working.
- To avoid wireless charger dysfunction or even accidents, do not place coins, metal keys, metal rings, or other articles containing metal in the wireless charger area together with the phone.
- To avoid damage to the charger area, do not place heavy objects on it.
- If the phone wireless charger system is faulty and does not work properly, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- BYD will not assume any responsibility for any problems caused by improper use. If the product is disassembled or modified, the free warranty will be terminated.
- For safety reasons, do not leave an unattended phone being charged in the vehicle.
- For safety reasons, refrain from checking phone charging status while driving.
- If a metal item is found between the device and the charger during charging, do not remove the metal item with bare hands to prevent burning.

CAUTION

- For better charging, the center of the phone coil must be aligned with the center of wireless charger (indicated with text in the charging area).
- Prevent any fluid from coming into contact with the charger area, or the wireless charger will malfunction.
- Charging may stop at high temperatures, and will resume once the temperature drops.
- The wireless phone charger system can charge Qi-certified phones, and non-Qi-certified phones are not guaranteed for normal charging.
- BYD makes no commitments for problems caused by external wireless charging coils. Please use with caution.
- To avoid burning cards with chips, such as bank cards and NFC key card, do not place them between the phone case and the phone during charging.

REMINDER

- Only one phone can be charged at a time.
- A phone case that is too thick may prevent charging.
- You can enable or disable wireless charging on the infotainment touchscreen.
- On bumpy roads, the wireless phone charging may intermittently stop and then resume.

REMINDER

- Try to ensure that the surface on which a mobile phone is placed is parallel to the charging module. If the phone moves from the wireless charger area and stops charging, move it back.
- If the phone cannot be charged properly, ensure that there are no foreign objects in the wireless charger area, or wait for the wireless charger area to cool down before trying again. If it is still impossible to charge the phone, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- After power-off, if the phone is still charging and the driver's door is opened, the instrument cluster sounds an alarm and a warning text "Please take your cell phone with you" is displayed for five seconds.

06 MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Precautions..... 198
Regular Maintenance.....200
Self-Maintenance.....206

Maintenance Precautions

Maintenance Cycle and Items

Maintenance Plan

- The maintenance plan is designed to ensure stable driving, failure reduction, safe and economical driving.
- The maintenance schedule lists all the necessary items to keep the vehicle in optimum condition at all times.
- The items in the maintenance schedule are important and need to be maintained according to the time interval.
- Hoses with any degradation or damage should be replaced immediately. Rubber hoses (for systems such as A/C, heating, and braking systems) must be checked by professional technicians according to the maintenance schedule.

Maintenance Instructions

The vehicle must be maintained according to the regular maintenance schedule.

If the vehicle is operated primarily under one or more of the following special conditions, some maintenance items may need to be performed more frequently.

- Road conditions
  - Muddy, sandy, or snowy roads.
  - Dusty roads
- Driving conditions
  - Use of towed trailer, camping trailer, or roof rack*.
  - Within 8 km, repeated short distances are driven and the outside temperature is below freezing.
  - Long idling and/or long distance driving at low speed, for example, using the vehicle as a police car, taxis or using it for transporting goods.

Maintenance Schedule

Vehicle maintenance is performed based on the mileages or months, whichever comes first.

Item	Interval
Brake friction block and disc	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km.
Brake piping and hoses	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km.
Steering wheel and tie rod	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km.
Drive shaft boot	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km.
Ball pin and boot	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km.
Front and rear suspensions	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km.
Tire condition and pressure, including TPMS	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km.

Item	Interval
Tire wear (check front and rear wheel alignment when tire uneven wear is greater than 2 mm)	Check during maintenance and rotate when necessary. In severe driving conditions, check more frequently and rotate when necessary.
EPS corrosion and foreign materials on or ablation of connectors, including wiring harness GND point	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km.
Coolant level in expansion tank	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km.
Brake fluid	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km.
Bumps or deformation of the high-voltage battery tray, crash bar, shield, and explosion-proof valve, and powertrain leaks	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km.
A/C filter	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km and replace if necessary. In severe driving conditions, check every six months and replace if necessary.
Drive motor coolant	Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every six years or 90,000 km.
Brake fluid	Check during maintenance and replace every 24 months or 30,000 km.
Gear oil in the transmission	Replace the gear oil and filter at 24 months or 30,000 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 48,000 km afterwards.
Note: When checking Item 1, replace chassis parts in a timely manner if any abnormal damage is found.	

CAUTION

- Brake friction pads and discs need to be checked more frequently in severe weather conditions, such as extremely cold regions like Norway, Finland, and Iceland.

REMINDER

- To keep the high-voltage battery in optimal condition, please fully charge and discharge the vehicle

REMINDER

regularly (at least every six months or 72,000 km, whichever comes first) for battery self-calibration. You can also contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for capacity testing and calibration.

Severe driving conditions refer to:

- Frequent driving in dusty areas or frequent exposure to salt-laden air.

- Frequent driving on bumpy, puddled, or mountain roads.
- Driving in cold weather.
- Frequent and sudden braking.
- Frequent use of a towed trailer.
- Use as a taxi.
- Driving in congested urban areas at temperatures above 32°C for more than 50% of total travel time.
- Driving at speeds over 120 km/h at temperatures above 30°C for more than 50% of total travel time.
- Frequent driving with maximum load.

Regular Maintenance

Regular Maintenance

- Be sure to maintain the vehicle as per the maintenance schedule to allow it serve in the best working efficiency and reduce fault occurrence.
- Drivers can refer to the maintenance plan for scheduled maintenance intervals, depending on the odometer reading or time interval, whichever comes first.
- For overdue maintenance items, the same time interval should be used for maintenance.
- It is recommended that maintenance be performed in accordance with the standards and specifications of BYD Auto Co., Ltd., and by a local BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- The maintenance schedule lists the maintenance items and travel time or distance based on the assumption that the vehicle is used as a normal means of transportation to carry passengers and goods that do not exceed the vehicle load limit.

CAUTION

- Please maintain the vehicle regularly according to the requirements in the Warranty and Maintenance Service Manual of BYD.

Vehicle Servicing

- Pay attention to vehicle performance, sound changes, and visual evidence that indicates service is required. Under any of the following circumstances, the vehicle may need to be checked or repaired, and it is recommended to send the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible:
  - Motor start produces unusual noises.
  - Coolant remains overheated, is stagnated or leaks.
  - Motor jams and produces unexpected noise.
  - The motor runs with excessive vibration.
  - The motor fails to get started.
  - Electric assembly leaks oil.
  - Electric assembly emits odors.
  - Power declines significantly.
  - Water leaks from under the vehicle (A/C condensate is normal).
  - Tire deflates; tires make excessive noises at turns; tire wear is uneven.
  - Vehicle leads to one side when driving straight on a flat surface.
  - Suspension unit movement leads to unusual noises.

- Loss of braking effect; sponge feeling on the brake pedal; pedal almost contacts the floor; vehicle leads to one side when braking.
- Motor coolant temperature remains high.
- Battery capacity decreases significantly.
- High battery temperature or overheat protection persists, or there is no power output.

WARNING

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injuries.

Vehicle Corrosion Prevention

The most common causes of vehicle corrosion are:

- The underbody of the vehicle is covered in salt, dust, or moisture.
- The vehicle or some of its parts are exposed to high humidity and high temperature for a long time.
- The paint layer or underlayer is scratched by minor collision or by stones and gravel.

The following rules should be observed to prevent vehicle corrosion:

- Wash the vehicle frequently.
  - If driving on saline roads in winter or living in coastal areas, wash the landing area of the vehicle at least once a month, and clean the chassis and hubcap with a high-pressure water jet or steam to reduce corrosion. Wash the chassis thoroughly after winter.
  - Wash the vehicle with clean water and neutral detergent.
- After driving near coastal roads, such as along the shoreline, on beaches, or if the vehicle has been driven into seawater or splashed by seawater, thoroughly rinse all components exposed to seawater immediately with a large amount of fresh water.
- Check vehicle paint and trims.
  - Any chip or crack found on the paint must be repaired immediately to prevent corrosion. If fragments or cracks peel off from the metal surface, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.
- Check interior vehicle.
  - Moisture and dust buildup under the carpet can cause corrosion. Check the undersides of carpets frequently to make sure these areas are dry.
  - Special care should be taken when the vehicle is transporting chemicals, detergents, fertilizers, salt, and other substances. Such substances should be kept in appropriate containers for transportation. If spillage or leakage is found, clean immediately and keep dry.
- Use fender liners.
  - Fender liners protect vehicles in saline areas or on gravel roads. The bigger and closer to the ground the fender liner, the better.
- Park in a well-ventilated and dry area.

Paint Maintenance Tips

- Do not perform secondary painting if there is no obvious scratches on the finish, so as to prevent mismatch or color incompatibility.

- When the vehicle is not used for a long period, it should be parked in a garage or a well-ventilated place, and special body cover should be used in winter. Choose a shady place for parking temporarily.
- Prevent strong impacts, knocks, or scratches on the paint. If the paint is scratched, dented or if it peels, it should be repaired in time, preferably by professional auto beauty provider.
- Do not touch the paint with a greasy hand or cloth. Do not place greasy tools or rub with organic solvents on the vehicle body so as to avoid chemical reactions.
- The vehicle must be waxed once a month or whenever water resistance performance of the vehicle degrades and be taken to an auto beauty provider for maintenance once every three months.
- High quality polish and wax must be used. If body finish is severely weathered, use a car cleaning polish in addition to the wax. Carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions and precautions. Chrome finish should be polished and waxed as well as painted finish.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle is repainted and placed in a high-temperature paint waxing workshop, the vehicle's plastic bumper must be removed to avoid damage caused by high temperatures.

Vehicle Cleaning

- The vehicle must be cleaned in time under the following circumstances, which can cause peeling of paint layer or corrosion of the vehicle body and parts:
  - Driving along the coast.
  - Driving on a road with anti-freeze.
  - Driving on roads covered with coal tar.
  - Resin, bird droppings, or insect carcasses are stuck on the vehicle.
  - Driving in areas with a large amount of smoke, soot, dust, iron filings, or chemicals.
  - The vehicle is visibly soiled by dust or mud.
  - After raining.

CAUTION

- Before washing the vehicle, ensure all doors, the hood, the trunk lid, and the charge port are closed.
- Do not open the charge port to clean the interior.
- Do not wash the vehicle in hot and direct sunlight conditions.

Manual Vehicle Washing

Before washing the vehicle, park it in the shade, and wait for the vehicle to cool down completely.

1. Hose off loose dirt, including all mud or road salts at the bottom of the vehicle and on wheel pits.
2. Wash the vehicle with neutral agents, the mixing of which should be carried out according to the manufacturer's instructions. Soak a soft cloth with cleaning solution and gently wipe it down along the direction of the water flow. Do not wipe in a circular motion or horizontally.

3. Rinse well—Dried washing agent forms markings. After washing the vehicle in hot weather, rinse all parts properly.
4. Dry the vehicle with a clean soft towel to prevent stay water marks. In order to prevent scratching, do not rub or apply excessive force on the paint.

Washing with high-pressure washer

- When using a high-pressure washer to wash the vehicle, follow the instructions below:
  - Keep the nozzle at least 30 cm away from the vehicle surface.
  - The recommended pressure is below 60 bar, and it must not exceed 100 bar.
  - Use a fan-shaped or mist spray pattern (do not use a direct high-pressure jet spray).
  - Keep the nozzle moving continuously; do not concentrate the jet on one spot.

CAUTION

- Follow the above instructions during washing, as failure to do so may result in vehicle or component damage.
- Avoid spraying sealing strips directly with high-pressure water. Excessive pressure may deform or damage the seals and cause water leakage into the vehicle interior.

REMINDER

- Do not use alkaline washing powder, soapy water, detergents, de-waxing detergents, or volatile substance such as gasoline, kerosene, or strong solvents.
- When cleaning the lights, avoid using alcohol-based products (like alcohol and windshield washer fluid), ketones (such as lacquer thinner and insect remover), or other chemical solvents (including gasoline, thinner, and carbon tetrachloride), as these can cause the light casings to crack.
- It is recommended that vehicles traveling in coastal or heavily polluted areas be washed once a day.
- Do not use blades or gasoline to remove hard dirt from the vehicle body. The plastic wheel trim is easily damaged by organic matter. If any organic matter splashes on the vehicle trims, wash it off with water and inspect for damage. Replace seriously damaged trims in a timely manner, as loose trims may fall from the wheel during driving and cause accidents.
- Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to scrub the bumper or lights.
- Clean polished metal parts with carbon cleaner and wax them regularly for protection.

Automatic Vehicle Washing

When using an automatic car wash, note that certain types of brushes, unfiltered rinse water, or specific wash programs may scratch the paint surface. Such scratches can reduce the gloss and durability of the paint, especially on dark-colored vehicles. Before washing, consult the service provider or refer to equipment instructions to confirm which washing program is safest for your vehicle's paint.

CAUTION

- Make sure to disable the AVH function before entering an automatic car wash.
- Fold the side mirrors before washing, and unfold them before driving.

Interior Cleaning

REMINDER

- Prevent direct water splash onto the dashboard or floor when washing the vehicle, as these may cause electrical faults.
- Do not wash the vehicle's floor with water to prevent corrosion.

Carpet

- Vacuum the carpet regularly.
- Clean the carpet regularly by scrubbing in a circular motion with a sponge or soft brush soaked in the suitable foaming detergent.
- Do not dilute the foam detergent and keep the carpet as dry as possible.

Seat Belts

- The seat belts can be cleaned with neutral soapy water or lukewarm water.
- Scrub the seat belts with a sponge or soft cloth. Check the seat belts for excessive wear, tear, or cut marks.

CAUTION

- Do not clean the seat belt with colorant or bleach. These substances may decrease the seat belt's strength.
- Do not use any seat belt that is not dry.

Doors and Windows

- Doors and windows can be cleaned with any ordinary detergent.
- Check the door brakes regularly. If a door brake lever is found with visible dust accumulation, wipe it with a wet soft cloth.

CAUTION

- When cleaning the inside of the rear windows, take care not to scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.

A/C Control Panel, Speakers, Dashboard, Control Panel and Switches

- Clean the A/C control panel, speakers, dashboard, control panel and switches with a wet soft cloth.
- Wipe dust off gently with a clean soft cloth soaked in lukewarm water.

CAUTION

- Do not use organic substances (for example, solvents, kerosene, alcohol, and gasoline) or acid or alkali solutions. These chemicals can cause discoloration, staining, or flaking.
- Please confirm that the detergent or polishing agent to be used does not contain the above substances.

CAUTION

- If a new liquid washing agent is used, do not splash it onto the interior surface of the vehicle, because it may contain the above substances. If there is any spillage, immediately clean it thoroughly.

Leather

- Leather trimmings can be cleaned with a neutral detergent for woolen.
- Use a soft cloth with a neutral detergent solution to wipe off the dust, and then use a clean, wet cloth to wipe the remaining detergent thoroughly.
- If leather gets wet, wipe it with a clean soft cloth and air dry it in a cool, ventilated place.
- For any questions about vehicle cleaning, please consult a local BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- If dirt cannot be cleaned off using a neutral detergent, clean it with a detergent that does not contain organic solvents.
- Do not clean leather with any organic material such as volatile oil, alcohol, gasoline, or acid-base solution, as these will cause discoloration.
- Do not clean leather with a nylon brush or synthetic fiber cloth, as these may scratch the fine patterns on the leather surface.
- Mold may grow on dirty leather trimmings. Special care must be taken to avoid oil stains, and trimmings must always be kept clean.

CAUTION

- Prolonged exposure to sunlight will cause leather to harden or shrink, so the vehicle should be parked in a shady and cool place, especially in the summer.
- In hot weather, the temperature inside the vehicle rises easily, so avoid placing vinyl or waxy items on the trimmings, as these may stick to leather in high temperatures.
- Improper cleaning of leather trimmings may cause discoloration or spots.

Flocked Surfaces

- Regularly use a clean, soft dry cloth or a soft-bristle brush to gently wipe the flocked surface and remove dust.
- If needed, a lint roller, adhesive tape, or a vacuum cleaner may be used to remove surface dust and loose fibers.

CAUTION

- Do not wipe the flocked surface with wet cloths, wet wipes, or any items containing water or cleaning agents.
- Avoid vigorous rubbing, scraping, or using hard-bristle brushes, as these may damage the surface finish.

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance Precautions

- If maintenance is to be carried out by the owner, be sure to follow the correct steps specified in this section.
- Improper or incomplete maintenance will affect the good use of the vehicle.
- This section only lists instructions on simple maintenance items that can be done by the owner. However, there are many items that must be done by qualified technicians with special tools.
- Special care must be taken in maintaining vehicles to prevent accidental injuries. Make sure to obey the followings:

WARNING

- If the motor is very hot, do not remove or loosen the expansion tank cover to prevent burns.
- Do not smoke in or near the vehicle to avoid sparks or open flames that may cause fire.
- Practice caution when handling the low-voltage battery, as it contains toxic and corrosive sulfuric acid.
- Never get under a vehicle supported only by a jack. Be sure to prop the vehicle up using both a jack and a vehicle stand before going underneath the vehicle.
- When working inside or under the vehicle, always wear goggles to protect your eyes against flying or falling objects or splashing liquid.

WARNING

- As brake fluid may damage the skin or eyes, be careful when filling it. If your skin or eyes are exposed to brake fluid, immediately flush with clean water. Seek medical attention immediately if discomfort persists.

CAUTION

- Beware of short circuits, as some circuits and vehicle components carry high current or voltage.
- If coolant overflows, wipe it with a dry cloth or tissue to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint.
- If brake fluid overflows, rinse it with water to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint.
- When replacing wiper blades, do not allow the wipers to scratch the glass surface.
- Before closing the hood, check whether any tool or wipe cloth is left in the engine compartment.

Checks

The following items should be checked according to usage or specified mileage:

- Windshield washer fluid - Check the residual amount of washer liquid in the tank monthly. When washer liquid is frequently used, check the residual amount at each charge.
- Windshield wiper - Check wiper conditions monthly. If the wiper does not work, check it for wear, cracking, or other damage.

- Brake fluid level - Check the level monthly.
- Brake pedal - Check whether the brake pedal is operating properly.
- EPB switch - Check whether the switch is functional.
- Low-voltage battery - Check battery conditions and check for terminal corrosion monthly.
- A/C system - Check the operation of A/C units weekly.
- Tires - Check tire pressure monthly. Check tread wear and whether there are foreign bodies embedded.
- Windshield defrosters - Check the defroster vent monthly.
- Lights - Check the condition of headlights, position lights, tail lights, high mount brake light, turn signals, rear fog lights, brake lights and license plate light monthly.
- Doors - Check whether the trunk lid and all other doors (including rear doors) can be opened freely and locked securely.
- Horn - Check whether the horn is functioning properly.

REMINDER

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

Combination Lights

Front combination lights

- Front combination lights are aligned before vehicle delivery. If the vehicle carries heavy load frequently, front combination lights may need to be realigned. It is recommended to have the front combination lights aligned by a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Fogging of lights

- Combination lights, tail lights, and turn signals on the side mirrors may become foggy after heavy rain or cleaning. This is similar to condensation on the side window during rain. It does not mean any problem with your vehicle.
- The lights are a relatively enclosed and narrow space. The temperature is very high when they light up (the mask and reflector could be burned and deformed easily), so they need heat dissipation. There are heat dissipation holes on the lamp housing for convection. The greater the temperature difference is, the more active the convection is. During the convection, the moisture in the air inevitably enters a lamp. Factors such as exposure to sunlight, convection, and bulb heating can cause the moisture in the air to condense into fog or water beads easily on the lamp surface at low temperatures. This is called fogging of lights.

REMINDER

- If fog presents inside the headlight and inside the turn signals on side mirrors, it may be due to high air humidity or significant temperature difference between the vehicle and its surroundings. In that case, turn on the headlight or turn signal while driving. The fog will evaporate after a short period of driving.
- Do not wax the light casings to prevent damage.
- If there is a noticeable amount of water inside the lights, it is

REMINDER

recommended to drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

Canopy Maintenance

- Wipe off dust or sand on the outer sealing strips of the sunroof with a damp cloth to avoid scratches, which may reduce sunroof sealing performance.
- Wipe off dust or sand on the molding edges of the front glass with a damp cloth to avoid scratches, which may reduce sunroof sealing performance.
- Clean the rails on both sides and the front channels frequently to avoid the accumulation of foreign materials like dust, sand, and leaves, and prevent such debris from blocking drainage holes, which could result in poor drainage of the sunroof.
- When washing the vehicle, make sure that the high-pressure water jets are at a sufficient distance from the vehicle, do not aim them directly at the sealing strips, to prevent high pressure from distorting even damaging the strips and water from leaking into the vehicle.

Vehicle Storage

- If the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time (more than a month), the following preparations should be made. Proper preparation helps prevent degradation and ensure easy use of the vehicle. If possible, park the vehicle indoors.
- Charge the vehicle on time.
- Thoroughly clean and dry the body surface.
- Clean the interior of the vehicle to ensure that carpets and mats are completely dry.
- Release the parking brake and set the gearshift lever in parking gear.
- Open one window slightly (if the vehicle is stored indoors).
- Disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery.
- Pad the front wiper arm with a folded towel or cloth to keep it out of contact with the windshield.
- To reduce adhesion, apply silicone lubricant to all door seals and body wax to the painted surface where the door seals meet.
- Cover the vehicle body with a breathable covering made of a "porous material", such as cotton. Non-porous materials, such as plastic sheeting, can build up moisture and damage the paint.
- If possible, start the vehicle regularly (preferably once every month). If the vehicle has been parked for a year or more, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for comprehensive maintenance.

Hood

Opening the Hood

1. Pull the handle under the dashboard twice. The hood unlocks and opens slightly.



2. Raise the hood to an appropriate height; then it will automatically rise to the open state.



Closing the Hood

1. To close the hood, lower it to a proper height and push it slightly until it partially locks. Then press slowly and evenly on the blue area as shown in the illustration with both hands to fully lock it. Keep your hands at a certain distance and do not press the ridges.



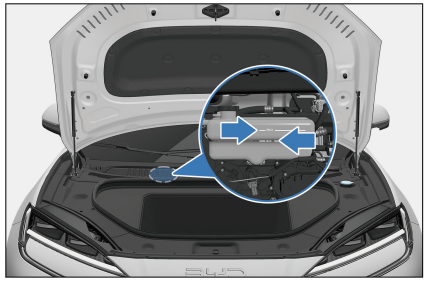
2. After closing the hood, check whether the latch is securely locked.

REMINDER

- Ensure that the hood is closed and locked firmly. Otherwise, the hood may suddenly open during driving, resulting in an accident.
- Do not force down the hood.
- Do not close the hood with a single hand, as this may concentrate the force in one area and cause damage to the hood.
- Do not press the front edge of the hood to prevent damage to the vehicle.

Cooling System

- It is required that the liquid level should be between the Maximum(MAX) and Minimum(MIN) marker lines of the expansion tank.
- The coolant must always be of the same specification as the original, without adding any mixture. Different brands and types of coolant should not be mixed.



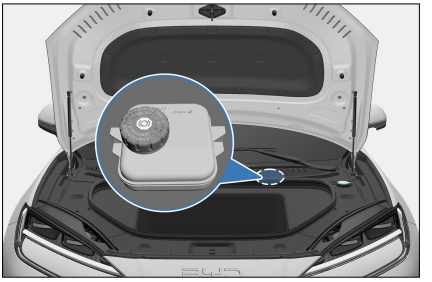
- Refill coolant to the MAX line if the level is below the MIN line. Check the cooling system for leakage.

CAUTION

- Do not add any rust inhibitor or other additives to the cooling system for they may be incompatible with the coolant or the motor components.
- Before opening the reservoir cap, make sure that the motor, high-voltage electronic control assembly, refrigerant reservoir and radiator are all cooled down. Opening the coolant expansion tank when the motor has not yet fully cooled down may cause coolant to squirt out, resulting in severe burns.

Braking System

- Check the level in the fluid tank monthly, and change the brake fluid according to the travel time and mileage specified in Maintenance Schedule.
- Be sure to use the brake fluid of the same specifications as the original brake fluid, and different types of brake fluid must not be mixed.
- It is required that the level in the fluid tank should be between "MAX" (maximum level) and "MIN" (minimum level) marks.
- If the level is below the MIN mark, check if the braking system leaks and the brake friction blocks are worn.



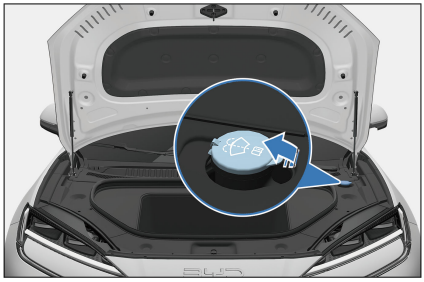
- Effects of high-altitude environments on brake fluid:
  - Atmospheric pressure decreases as altitude increases, which may increase the air content in the brake fluid and cause the brake system malfunction warning light to illuminate. Before driving in high-altitude areas, have the intelligent power braking system properly bled at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- If the braking system is not bled before driving in high-altitude areas, the brake pedal may feel soft and braking distance may increase during driving. In severe cases, vehicle power may be limited. Drive with caution.

Windshield Washer

- During normal use, check the liquid level of the windshield washer reservoir at least monthly.
- If the windshield washer is used frequently, the level of the washer reservoir should be checked more frequently.
- High quality windshield washer fluid should be added to improve stain removal and prevent freezing in cold weather.



- When refilling the washer fluid, use a clean cloth dipped in the windshield washer fluid to clean the windshield wiper blade. This helps keep the wiper blade in good condition.

CAUTION

- Do not inject vinegar-water solution into the windshield washer reservoir.
- It is recommended to use certified windshield washer fluid.

A/C System

- The A/C system is a closed system, and any important maintenance work should be performed by professionals from a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- The following practices help ensure that the A/C system works effectively.
  - Check the radiator and A/C condenser regularly.
  - Remove leaves, insects, and dust from the front surface of the A/C system. These deposits hinder the air flow and reduce the cooling effect.
  - In cold months, turn the A/C on at least once a week for 10 minutes to circulate the lubricating oil in the refrigerant unit.
  - If A/C cooling efficiency decreases, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

CAUTION

- Whenever the A/C system is maintained, the maintenance station should use a refrigerant recycling system. The system can recycle refrigerants to avoid environmental pollution caused by directly discharging the refrigerant.

Wiper Blades

The blade strip, made of synthetic rubber, is a vulnerable part. Various service environment of the vehicle and usage habits of drivers can damage the blades. Therefore, please observe the following to ensure the service life of blades and driving safety:

- Do not use a blade to remove ice from the windshield surface. Use a customized ice scraper.
- Do not scrape the windscreen surface if it is dirty, greasy or waxy.
- Keep the windshield surface clean. Do not scrape dust, sand, insects, or foreign bodies on the windshield surface.
- During vehicle washing and body paint maintenance, there is no need to wax the windshield, as the wax layer reflects light in bad light, affecting the line of sight and driving safety. After washing the vehicle, rinse the blade with plain water, and use special windscreen wax cleaner to remove the wax layer on the windshield.
- To prevent excessive water pressure from damaging the blades, do not wash the blades directly with a water jet.

Maintenance Rules

- Clean windshield and blade regularly (preferably once a week or once every two weeks).
- Wipe the wiper regularly (preferably once a day or once every two days). When using a blade to wipe the windshield, keep the windshield fully wet. (When there is no rain, the washer liquid must be sprayed in advance).
- Clean the windshield with a special windshield washer fluid.
- Promptly clean mud and insect carcasses stuck to the windshield with a rag.
- When there are marks on the windshield caused by gravel, maintenance must be carried out timely. (It is recommended that windshield repair resin products should be used and the windshield should be replaced if marks are too large or too many.)
- Replace the wiper blades regularly, preferably once every six months.
- When cleaning the windshield, raise the wiper arm in advance. The specific operation method is as follows:

  1. Go to infotainment touchscreen → → **Service** → **Overhaul** to enable **Front wiper check**. The wiper is then rotated to the top.
  2. Grasp the upper end of the wiper arm and carefully lift the wiper arm and blade assembly.

Tires

- For safe driving, tires must be made and sized to fit the vehicle, with good tread and standard tire pressure.
- This section provide details on how to check tire pressure, damage to and wear of tires, and the operating method for tire transposition.

WARNING

- Using tires with excessive wear or insufficient/excessive pressure can result in accidents, severe injury, or death.
- Please follow all instructions in this manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Tire Inflation

- Keep tires properly inflated to provide the best combination of maneuverability, tread life, and driving comfort.
- Under-inflated tires can cause uneven tire wear, affect steerability and energy consumption, and are prone to leakage due to overheating.
- Over-inflated tires reduce riding comfort and are prone to damage from uneven roads. In severe cases, the risk of tire bursting poses severe threats to the safety of the entire vehicle. Over-inflation will also cause uneven wear and tear of tires, affecting tire service life.
- When tires are cold, you can decide whether to replenish tire pressure according to the tire pressure values displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Tire pressure should be measured while tires are at ambient temperatures. This means that it should be measured at least three hours after stop. If you must drive the vehicle before the tire pressure is measured, tires can still be considered at ambient temperatures as long as the

traveled distance is not more than 1.6 km.

- It is normal that tire pressure reading measured while tires are hot (after travel of several kilometers) is 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 bar) higher than when tires are cold. In that case, do not deflate tires in order to achieve the specified cold tire pressure reading; otherwise, the tire pressure will be insufficient.

REMINDER

- The recommended cold tire pressure is indicated on the label affixed to the driver's door frame.
- Tubeless tires have a self-sealing function when they are punctured. However, as the leak is usually very slow, as soon as the tire begins to depressurize, carefully look for the leak location.

Checks

- Whenever checking tire inflation, check tires for damage, foreign body piercing and wear.
  - Replace the tire if bumps, or tread or side damage are found. Tires must be replaced if any of the cases happens.
  - Replace the tire if there are cracks on its side or if its fabric or cord can be seen.
  - Replace tires with excessive tread wear.
- Tire treads are cast with wear bars. When the tread is even with the wear bar, its thickness is less than 1.6 mm. The adhesion of tires worn to this extent is very small on wet roads.
- Tires with exposed wear bars are experiencing serious performance loss and therefore must be replaced.



Maintenance

- In addition to proper inflation, proper wheel alignment also helps reduce tread wear.
- If uneven tire wear is found, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider and check the wheel alignment.
- Although the vehicle has been balanced in the factory, it needs to be re-balanced after running for a period of time.
- If there is some kind of continuous vibration at high vehicle speeds (above 80 km/h), but not at low vehicle speeds, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for tire checks.
- If a tire has been repaired, be sure to re-balance it.
- After installing a new tire or replacing a new wheel, always perform tire balancing.

CAUTION

- Improper wheel balancers can become loose and fall off, which damages the vehicle or surrounding objects during vehicle travel.

CAUTION

- Improper wheel balancers damage the aluminium rims of the vehicle. Therefore, it is recommended to use original wheel balancers to keep balance.

Tire Rotation

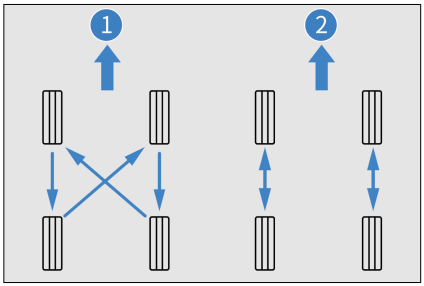
- In order to make tires wear the same and prolong their service life, it is recommended to check the wheel tread wear inside and outside regularly (at intervals not exceeding 10,000 km) and rotate tires and conduct four-wheel alignment if necessary.
- Do not rotate tires when a spare tire* is used for the vehicle.
- After tire replacement, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for tire pressure matching.

Directional tires and wheels

- When purchasing replacement tires, you may find that some tires are "directional", which can only be rotated in one direction. If directional tires are used, only the front and rear wheels can be swapped when rotating tires.
- Tire rotation for four-wheel drive vehicles is as shown:

① Non-directional tires and wheels.

② Directional tires and wheels.



WARNING

- Since rear-wheel drive vehicles have wider rear tires, wheels can only be switched from side to side. If directional tires are used on rear-wheel drive vehicles, tire rotation is not accessible.

Replacing Tires and Wheels

- Original tires maximize performance, while providing the best combination of maneuverability, driving comfort and service life.
- It is recommended to replace with original tires at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Replacement of tires with different sizes, road ranges, rated speeds and maximum cold pressures (marked on the tire side) or mixed use of radial tires and diagonal tires can reduce braking ability, driving force (ground adhesion) and steering accuracy.
- Unsuitable tires affect the maneuverability and stability of the vehicle, and may lead to accidents.
- Do not replace only one tire; otherwise it will severely affect the maneuverability of the vehicle.
- ABS works by comparing wheel speed. When replacing a tire, use a tire of the same size as the original tire. The size and structure of the tire affect wheel speed and may lead to uncoordinated system operation.
- If the wheel needs to be replaced, ensure that the specifications of the new wheel match those of the original wheel. New wheels are available for purchase at BYD authorized dealer or service providers. Please consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider before replacing the wheels.

REMINDER

Please observe the following precautions to ensure proper vehicle maneuverability and control.

- Do not mix radial tires, bias belted tires, or diagonal ply tires on the vehicle.
- Do not use tires with dimensions other than those recommended by the manufacturer.

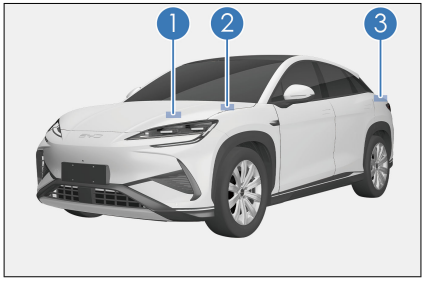
Fuses

All vehicle circuits are provided with fuses to prevent short circuit or overloading. Fuses are mounted in the under-bonnet power distribution box (PDB), the dashboard PDB, and the rear compartment PDB. Fuse labels are included in these PDBs, showing the correspondence of fuses with electrical components.

① Under-hood PDB

② Dashboard PDB

③ Rear compartment PDB



- The fuses under the hood are located at the left rear part in the engine compartment. To open it, remove the trim first, and press the latch.
- The dashboard fuse under the driver's side is located on the side of the dashboard that is close to the door. Take apart the lower body of the dashboard to check the fuse.
- Replacement of blown fuses with ones of higher amperage can significantly increase the likelihood of damage to the electrical system.
- If there is no spare fuse of the same amperage, use a fuse with lower amperage instead.

REMINDER

- Do not use fuses with amperage higher than the rated ampere value or any other solution to replace the fuses, as this can cause serious damage or even a fire.
- If a fuse blows, it is recommended to check or replace the fuse at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

07 WHEN FAULTS OCCUR

When Faults Occur.....218

When Faults Occur

Reflective Vest

- The reflective vest is in the tool kit.
- In case of emergency, always wear the reflective vest properly before you check for faults or handle accidents to ensure your safety.

If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted

If the smart key indicator does not flash and the vehicle cannot be started using the start function, the smart key battery may be exhausted. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for battery change as soon as possible. In this case, you may start the vehicle in no power mode.

CAUTION

- Do not place the key in areas at high temperatures.
- Magnetic fields generated by nearby radio stations, substations or airport radio transmitters may interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
- After locking the vehicle and arming its anti-theft alarm system, keep the key away from the vehicle if you do not use the vehicle; otherwise the automatic card finding of the vehicle will consume the power of the low-voltage battery and the smart key.

Starting the vehicle when the electronic smart key runs out of battery:

1. Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.
2. Put the smart key close to the no-power sign in the cubby box.
3. Press the START/STOP button and the brake pedal to start the vehicle.



Emergency Shutdown System

- The emergency shutdown system is activated and the high-voltage system is automatically shut down when the following conditions are met:
  - The airbags do not deploy after a frontal collision.
  - There is a rear collision.
  - The vehicle system is faulty.
- The OK indicator goes off if any of the above situations occurs.
- Activating the emergency shutdown system in the noted types of collision minimizes the risk of injuries or accidents.
- The vehicle system cannot be switched into the OK status once the emergency shutdown system is activated. In that case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for help. The system is turned off immediately even if the ignition is switched on. Contact a BYD authorized

dealer or service provider as soon as possible.

Vehicle Fire Rescue

In case of fire, operate the vehicle as follows according to the actual situation:

1. Switch the ignition off, and leave the vehicle.
2. On the precondition that personal safety is ensured, if the fire is small and slow, use a dry powder fire extinguisher to put it out fire, and call for help immediately.
3. If the fire is large and growing quickly, stay away from the vehicle and wait for rescue.

CAUTION

- Wear insulated gloves during vehicle disassembly. Use fire extinguishers of designated type. Water or incorrect fire extinguishers may cause electric shock.
- In the event of other special conditions that cause flying projectiles (such as interior trims and glass), stay away from the vehicle and promptly ask a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to come to the site for handling.

If the High-Voltage Battery Leaks

After a collision, if there is battery leakage, an acrid smell inside the vehicle, visible acid flow outside the vehicle, or any smoke with the battery pack:

1. Switch the ignition off, and disconnect the low-voltage battery if conditions permit.
2. Call a BYD authorized dealer or service provider and the fire brigade, informing them that the vehicle is equipped with a high-voltage battery pack, and wait for rescue.

If a Collision Occurs

In case of collision, operate the vehicle as follows according to the actual situation:

1. Switch the ignition off, and disconnect the low-voltage battery if conditions permit.
2. Call immediately a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for rescue.
3. Carry out a simple inspection, if conditions permit: Check whether any edge of the high-voltage battery tray is cracked and whether any obvious liquid flows out.
   - Damage to high-voltage components is not identifiable in all cases. Do not handle damaged components or touch them with jewelry or other metal objects.
   - If skin comes in contact with leaked fluid, wash it immediately with plenty of water for 10-15 minutes. If there is still any discomfort, apply 2.5% calcium gluconate ointment, or soak in 2% to 2.5% calcium gluconate solution. If the condition does not get better or discomfort persists, seek medical help immediately.
   - Do not touch the orange high-voltage cables or other high-voltage components. Only authorized repair personnel is allowed to work on high-voltage systems.
   - Do not damage, modify, disassemble, or disconnect the orange high-

voltage cables from the high-voltage grid.

- Inform the firemen and rescue personnel that the vehicle is equipped with a high-voltage battery pack.

WARNING

- Do not touch any spilled liquid, and stay away from a leaking vehicle or high-voltage battery.
- Do not dispose of the leaked fluid into the water or soil or other environment.
- The vehicle system operates with high-voltage DC power. It generates a lot of heat before and after vehicle start-up and when the vehicle is powered off. Watch out for high pressures and high temperatures.
- Do not disassemble, move, or alter high-voltage battery components and connecting cables as their connectors can cause serious burns or electric shock and may result in personal injuries or death. The orange cables are part of high-voltage wiring harness. Users must not repair the vehicle's high-voltage system by themselves. If any repair is required, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.
- The remote control key and high-voltage components of the vehicle may affect and harm people carrying medical devices.

If the Vehicle Needs Towing

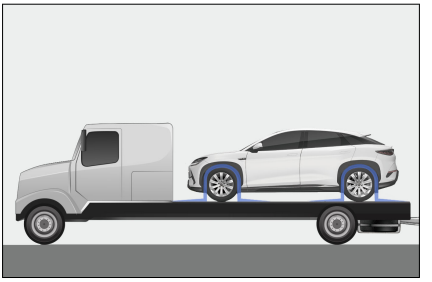
If the vehicle needs towing, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider, a professional towing service, or the organization you joined for roadside assistance.

CAUTION

- The vehicle must not be towed by other vehicles using only ropes or chains.

Recommended towing method:

- Flatbed device
  - If the vehicle fails and needs towing, a flatbed trailer is recommended. When the vehicle is being towed, keep its four wheels off the ground. Towing the vehicle on front or rear wheels alone may damage high-voltage components.



REMINDER

- When moving a vehicle with a flatbed trailer, make sure that the vehicle is properly secured to prevent it from sliding back.
- It is recommended to use professional tie-down straps and tensioners, and employ the over-

REMINDER

the-wheel method to secure the vehicle.

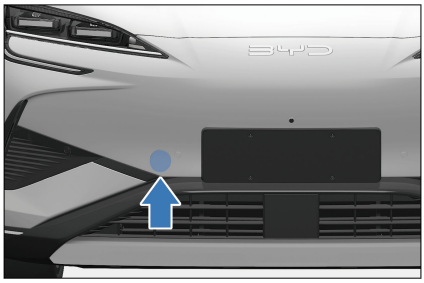
- When fixing the vehicle, avoid routing tie-down straps, ropes, or other securing devices through the wheels or attaching them to the chassis, suspension, or any other part of the vehicle body to prevent damage.
- Ensure the vehicle's wheels are immobilized during transport to prevent potential damage.

Tow Eye

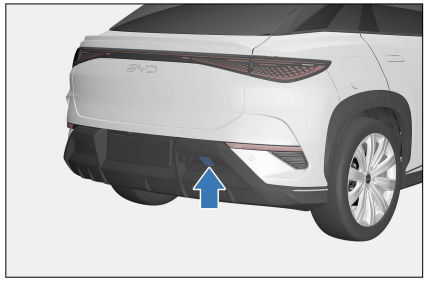
The vehicle is equipped mounting holes for the tow eye at the front and rear. Install the tow eye as follows:

1. Open the cover.
2. Install the tow eye in the tow eye opening.

The front mounting point is shown in the illustration.



The rear mounting point is shown in the illustration.



- If the vehicle needs rescue, contact a professional rescue or the customer service number.
- In emergency situations where the vehicle needs to be towed for rescue, follow the precautions below. If these precautions conflict with applicable regulations, always adhere to applicable regulations to prevent vehicle damage or personal injury.
  - The towing vehicle must be in good conditions and the towed vehicle in Neutral gear. The towing speed must be no more than 5km/h.
  - Never use jerking actions to pull the vehicle.
  - The towed vehicle must not carry any person except for the driver or tow any trailer.
  - Both towing and towed vehicles must have their hazard warning lights on.
  - To avoid damages to the vehicle, only the in-vehicle tow eye can be used.
  - The distance between the towing and towed vehicles must be more than 4 meters but less than 10 meters.
  - The width and weight of the towed vehicle must not be greater than those of the towing vehicle.
  - When the vehicle is being towed, ensure its surroundings are unobstructed and have enough

space and no person is close to the towing device.

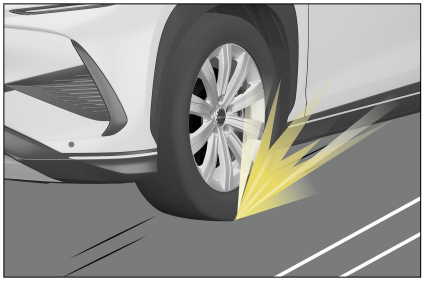
- When freeing the vehicle, control to make it travel in the direction of tow force. Dragging the vehicle from the side or vertically is prohibited.
- The towed vehicle must be controlled by a driver inside the cabin, with the steering and braking systems in normal conditions.

CAUTION

- Never rescue a stuck or high-centered vehicle with tow eyes. Call a professional rescue or the customer service number.
- If the steering or braking system of the towed vehicle fails, contact a professional rescue or call the customer service number. Do not tow the vehicle directly.

If a Tire Goes Flat

- Maintain the lane position and gradually slow down the vehicle. Drive the vehicle off the busy road to a safe place. Park on solid, flat ground and avoid highway forks.



- Please refer to the followings to operate when parking:

1. Depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle smoothly, and then press the "P" button and shift into Park. In such case, the Park gear indicator on the instrument cluster lights up.
2. Press START/STOP button.

- Power off the vehicle and turn on the hazard warning light.
- Be sure to have all passengers get off the vehicle and ask them to go to a safe place away from crowded traffic.
- To prevent slipping, secure the vehicle by wedging the tire diagonally against the flat tire.

CAUTION

- Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Even a short distance of driving with a flat tire can cause irreparable damage.

In-Vehicle Tools

- In-vehicle tools are stored in the tool kit.

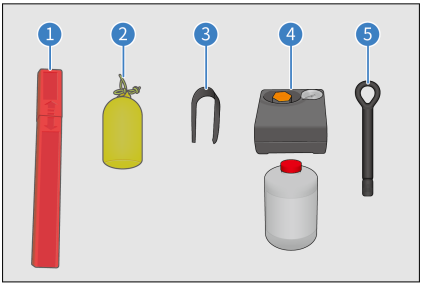
① Warning triangle

② Reflective vest

③ Lug nut cover removal clamp

④ Tire repair kit

⑤ Tow eye



- In an emergency where you need to service the vehicle yourself, you must know how to use these in-vehicle tools and their locations.

Placing the warning triangle

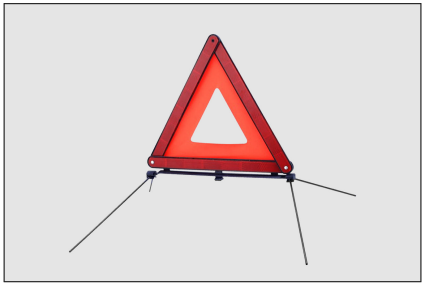
The warning triangle is used to warn vehicles coming from behind and to avoid collisions due to high speed or late braking.

REMINDER

- When parking for repair, place the warning triangle correctly as per local regulations. Ensure the red side is facing oncoming traffic to warn other drivers.
- After using the warning triangle, put it back for future use.

How to use the warning triangle:

1. Take the warning triangle out of its box.
2. Attach the ends to form a triangle.
3. Mount the supports as shown.



Using Tire Repair Kit

- The tire repair kit is used to seal small cuts, especially cuts in tread pattern. It is just an emergency solution for you to drive to the nearest service center, and only for short emergency stretches, even if the tire is not deflated.

WARNING

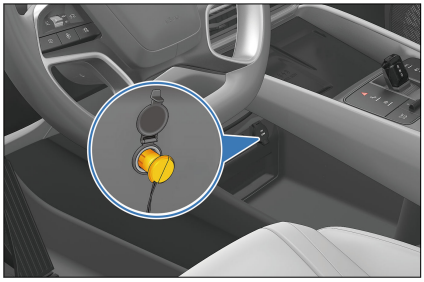
- The tire repair kit is only suitable for minor damages of tires. If a wheel is damaged, do not use the tire repair kit.
- Tire sealant is highly flammable and harmful to health. Take necessary precautions to prevent fire and avoid contact with skin, eyes, and clothing; keep away from children; and do not inhale its vapor.

In case of contact with tire sealant:

- If tire sealant comes into contact with the skin or gets into the eyes, thoroughly flush the affected body part immediately with plenty of clean water.
- Change contaminated clothing immediately.
- In case of an allergic reaction, seek medical attention immediately.
- If tire sealant is ingested by accident, rinse mouth thoroughly and drink plenty of water immediately. Do not induce vomiting, but seek medical attention immediately.

Using the tire repair kit

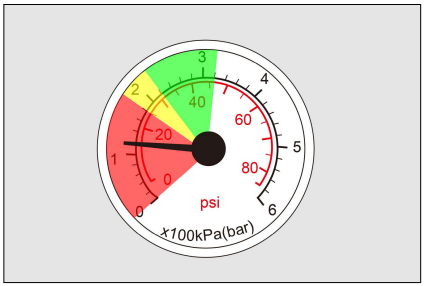
- Refer to the labels on the inflator and tire sealant for usage of the kit.
- If the inflator needs to be connected to a power source, plug the inflator into the vehicle's 12 V socket, start the vehicle, and turn on the inflator. The tire sealant is then filled through the inflator hose into the tire along with air.



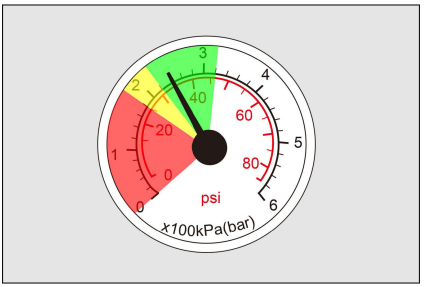
REMINDER

- Make sure the inflator switch is off when you plugging the power supply into the 12 V socket in the vehicle.
- The inflator can only be turned on for up to 10 minutes.

- Observe the tire pressure reading on the inflator.
  - If the tire pressure does not reach 180 kPa within 10 minutes (red area shown in the illustration), turn off the inflator. You are recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.



- If the tire pressure reaches between 180 and 320 kPa (green and yellow areas shown in the illustration), remove the kit as soon as possible and drive at a speed below 80 km/h within one minute, with the furthest driving distance not exceeding 10 km, so that the tire sealant is evenly distributed within the tire.



- Stop to check the repaired tire and the tire pressure reading on the inflator.
  - If the tire pressure is greater than 220 kPa, drive to the nearest service center at a speed below 80 km/h.
  - If the tire pressure is between 130 and 220 kPa, repeat the process to fill the tire sealant into the tire and observe the tire pressure gauge reading on the inflator.
  - If the tire pressure does not reach 130 kPa, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- Using tire repair kit on damaged tires is only an emergency solution. Please change the tires at a professional repair center as soon as possible. It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider and inform the maintenance technician that tire sealant has been used.
- After repairing a tire with the tire repair device, it is recommended that you purchase new tire sealant and inflation hoses at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- Avoid hard acceleration and high-speed turns.
- Do not exceed the 80 km/h maximum speed limit and replace flat tires as soon as possible. Do not drive further if the vehicle experiences strong vibration, unstable performance, or noise.
- Avoid bumping or squeezing the tire repair sealant to ensure stable product performance.
- If the tire repair sealant is approaching its expiration date or has been subjected to impact or compression, it is recommended to replace it with a new one.

08 TECHNICAL DATA

Vehicle Data..... 228
Information..... 232
Declarations of Conformity..... 234

Vehicle Data

Specifications

Dimensions

Item	Parameter	
Trim level	A/B/C/D	E/F
Length (mm)	4830	4830
Width (mm, excluding side mirrors)	1925	1925
Height (mm)	1620	1620
Wheelbase (mm)	2930	2930
Front track (mm)	1660	1660
Rear track (mm)	1660	1660
Front overhang (mm)	900	900
Rear overhang (mm)	1000	1000
Approach angle (°)	16	16
Departure angle (°)	19	18

Vehicle mass

Item	Parameter				
Trim level	A	B	C	D	E/F
Curb weight (kg)	2225	2295	2340	2435	2160
Front axle load (kg)	1042	1072	1151	1200	1010
Rear axle load (kg)	1183	1223	1189	1235	1150
Maximum allowable total mass (kg)	2635	2705	2750	2845	2700
Front axle load at maximum allowable total mass (kg)	1159	1190	1271	1317	1155
Rear axle load at maximum allowable total mass (kg)	1476	1515	1479	1528	1545

Item	Parameter				
Number of occupants (persons)	5	5	5	5	5

Drive motor

Item	Parameter			
Trim level	A/B	C/D	E	F
Model	Rear: TZ200XYT	Front: YS210XYA Rear: TZ200XYT	Rear: TZ200XYS	Rear: TZ200XYS
Type	Rear: Permanent magnet synchronous motor	Front: AC asynchronous motor Rear: Permanent magnet synchronous motor	Rear: Permanent magnet synchronous motor	Rear: Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Drive type	RWD	4WD	RWD	RWD
Rated power/ speed/torque (kW/rpm/N · m)	Rear: 70/4456/150	Front: 75/7958/90 Rear: 70/4456/150	Rear: 70/5000/150	Rear: 70/5000/150
Peak power/ revolving speed/ torque (kW/rpm/N · m)	Rear: 230/23000/380	Front: 160/20500/310 Rear: 230/23000/380	Rear: 170/23000/380	Rear: 160/23000/380

Vehicle power performance and economic efficiency

Item	Parameter					
Trim level	A	B	C	D	E	F
Maximum design speed (km/h)	215	215	215	215	210	210
Maximum gradeability (%)	30	30	50	50	30	30
Power consumption per 100 km under	19.9	19.3	21.4	21.9	19.1	18.7

Item	Parameter
comprehensive working conditions (kW·h/100 km)	

High-voltage battery

Item	Parameter	
Trim level	A/C	B/D/E/F
Type	Lithium iron phosphate battery	
High-voltage battery rated capacity (Ah)	150	170

Wheels and tires

Item	Parameter	
Trim level	A/B/E/F	C/D
Tire specification	235/50 R19; 255/45 R19	245/45 R20
Tire pressure (kPa)	Front/Rear: 290/290 Front/Rear (when towing a trailer): 290/310	
Wheel dynamic balance requirement (g)	＜ 10	

Wheel alignment values (at curb weight)

Item	Parameter
Front camber (°)	-0.5±0.75
Total front wheel toe-in (°)	0.2±0.16
Kingpin inclination angle (°)	8.33±0.75
Kingpin caster angle (°)	6.09±0.75
Rear camber (°)	-1±0.5
Total rear wheel toe-in (°)	0.4±0.16

Braking system

Item	Parameter	
Trim level	A/B/C/D	E/F

Item	Parameter	
Free stroke of brake pedal (mm)	1–5	1–5
Front brake disc standard thickness (mm)	32	28
Front brake disc minimum thickness (mm)	30	26
Rear brake disc standard thickness (mm)	20	20
Rear brake disc minimum thickness (mm)	18	18
Front friction plate standard thickness (mm)	12	8
Front friction plate minimum thickness (mm)	2	2.5
Rear friction plate standard thickness (mm)	6.5	6.5
Rear friction plate minimum thickness (mm)	2.5	2.5

Seats

Item	Parameter
Forward and backward moving spaces for front seats (seat cushion depth measured)	260 mm forward from the end of slide rail travel
Seatback angle of front seats (cushion depth measured)	23°
Normal service conditions of front seatbacks	16° forward and 50° backward from the designed position; slide rail: 200mm forward and 60mm backward; slide rail inclination: 4.5°
Forward and backward moving spaces for rear seat (seat cushion depth measured)	Not adjustable
Seatback angle of rear seats (cushion depth measured)	27°
Normal service conditions of rear seatbacks	6° backward and 14° forward from the designed position. The seatbacks can be folded forward beyond 14°.

Recommended oil type and amount

Item	Parameter		
Trim level	A/B/F	C/D	E

Item	Parameter		
Front drive gear transmission oil type	-	BOT-383	-
Front drive gear transmission oil amount (L)	-	1.6±0.05	-
Rear drive gear transmission oil type	BOT-383		
Rear drive gear transmission oil amount (L)	1.55±0.05		
Brake fluid type	HZY6/DOT4		
Brake fluid amount (L)	1.15±0.05		
Motor controller coolant type	Glycol organic acid long-acting anti-rust antifreeze		
Motor coolant amount (L)	6.05±0.2	6.65±0.2	6.05±0.2 4.8±0.2

CAUTION

- The recommended oil types have been tested and approved by BYD. Using other oil types may compromise vehicle performance, and could cause malfunctions or damage to components.

Information

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

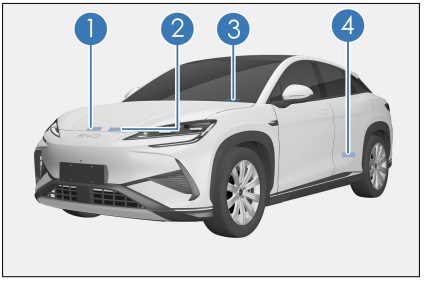
Positions of attached VIN:

① On the left of the front bumper beam

② On the left of the hood lock ring

③ On the left of the front windshield cross sill

④ On the rear motor

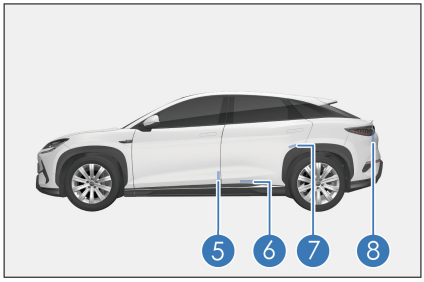


⑤ On the sheet metal surface at the lower corner of front left door

⑥ On the left rear door sill

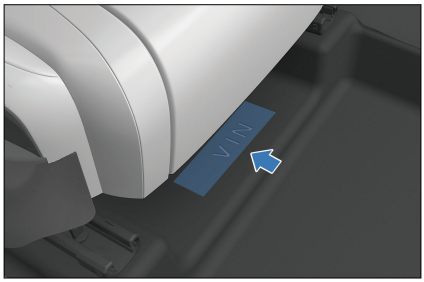
⑦ On the left rear wheel envelope

⑧ On the left of the trunk lid



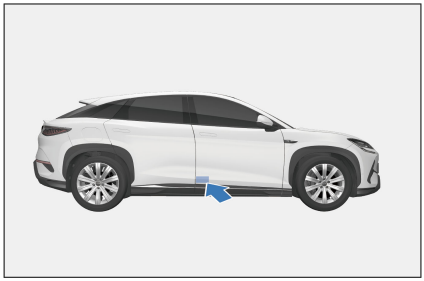
Position of engraved VIN:

VIN is engraved on the lower beam of the front right seat. After connecting the VDS, the VIN can be found in the upper right corner of the screen for the corresponding model. For details, refer to the VDS operation manual.



Vehicle Nameplate

The vehicle nameplate is located in the lower part of the right B-pillar.



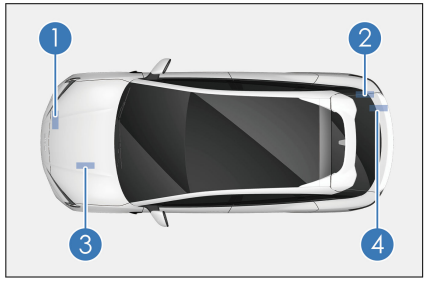
Model and Serial Number of Drive Motor

① The model and serial number of front drive motor* are attached on the upper part of the hood's inner panel.

② The model and serial number of rear drive motor are attached on the right part of the sheet metal surface on the trunk lid.

③ The model and serial number of the front drive motor* are engraved on the front drive motor housing.

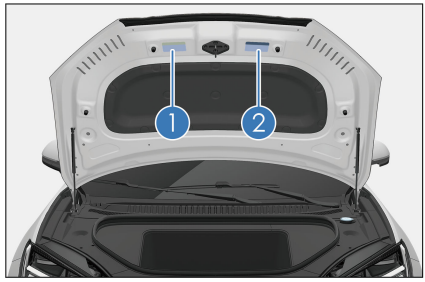
④ The model and serial number of the rear drive motor are engraved on the rear drive motor housing.



Warning Labels

① A/C system and cooling fan label

② Battery position label



Side airbag warning labels are attached on the lower part of the left and right B-pillars and C-pillars.

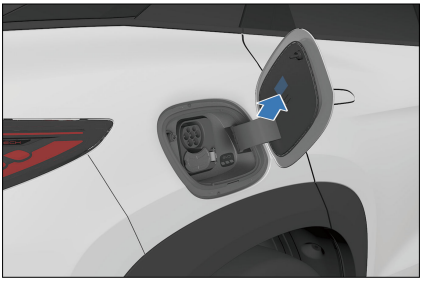


The airbag warning label is printed on the front passenger's sun visor.



The charging warning label is attached on the inside the cover of the charge port.





The tire pressure label is attached below the driver's side B-pillar.

Declarations of Conformity

Declarations of Conformity

Radio Frequency Statement

CE	The vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that the RF Modules are in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following Internet address: https://cn-prod.byd.com/eu/eu-doc.

Component Name	Frequency	Maximum Power
Tire pressure monitoring module	314.9 MHz ± 25 KHz	86 dBμV/m ± 3 dB

	315 MHz ± 45 KHz	-58~-52 dBm (3 meters radius)
	433.92 MHz ± 44 KHz	87 dBμV/m ± 2 dB
	433.92 MHz ± 40 KHz	-58~-52 dBm (3 meters radius)
Interior detection antenna	125 KHz ± 3 KHz	10 W
Electronic smart key	433.92 MHz ± 60 KHz	10 dbm
High-frequency module	433.92 MHz	0.48 W
Wireless charger module	127.7 KHz ± 30 KHz	50 W (one side)
ECALL GPS antenna	1575.42 MHz ± 1.023 MHz 1561.098 MHz ± 2.046 MHz	0.066 W
ECALL 4G antenna	700–960 MHz 1710–2690 MHz	/
Bluetooth host	2400–2483.5MHz	20 dBm
Four-in-one network communication antenna (4G)	700–960 MHz 1710–2690 MHz	/
Network communication host (4G)	850–1900MHz	23 dBm
FM radio antenna amplifier	76–108 MHz	1.2 W
FM radio broadcasting host	87–108 MHz	/
AM antenna amplifier	520–1710 KHz	1.2 W
AM host	520–1620 KHz	0.5 W
DAB antenna amplifier	170.928–239.2MHz	0.5 W
DAB host	170–240MHz	/
Four-in-one antenna (GPS, 4G, WiFi/BT)	1575.42 MHz ± 1.023 MHz; 1561.098 MHz ± 2.046MHz (GPS) 700–960 MHz; 1710–2690MHz (4G)	0.066 W
Exterior NFC device	13.56 MHz	1 W
Interior NFC device	13.56 MHz	1.5 W

Front mmWave radars	76.0 GHz–77.0 GHz	/
Rear mmWave radars	76.0 GHz–77.0 GHz	/

Smart Key Statement

	Uzbekistan Model: D1-92
	EU countries Model: D1-92
	Brazil Model: D1-92 This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorized systems.
FCC ID: 2A5DHD1-315	The United States Model: D1-315
	Japan Model: D1-315

MmWave Radars Statement

	EU countries Certificate ID: T.2021.08.0001
	Japan Certificate ID: 219-210015
	Brazil Certificate ID: 15210-21-03745 This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorized systems.

Numerics

12 V Auxiliary Power..... 193

A

A/C Buttons..... 183
A/C Operation Interface..... 184
A/C Settings Interface..... 183
A/C System Maintenance..... 211
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)..... 163
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)..... 124
Air Purification System*..... 188
Airbag Overview..... 15
Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)... 171
Anti-theft Alarm System..... 27
Around View Monitor (AVM)..... 163
Automatic Anti-glare Interior Rearview Mirror..... 70
Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) 138
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)..... 115

B

Blind Spot Detection (BSD)..... 151
Brake Fluid..... 210
Break-in Period..... 102

C

Canopy Maintenance..... 208
Carrying Luggage..... 106
Central Locking..... 75
Charging Mode..... 85
Charging Port Immobilizer System 95
Charging Precautions..... 83
Charging Safety Warnings..... 82
Child Presence Detection (CPD)*. 174
Child Protection Lock..... 60
Child Restraint System..... 21
Coolant..... 209
Cubby Box..... 191

D

Data Collection and Processing..... 28
Declarations of Conformity..... 234
Direct Tire Pressure Monitoring... 161
Discharging..... 94
Discharging Instructions..... 93
Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities..... 31
Door Bins..... 190
Door Open Warning (DOW)..... 153
Driver Assistance Switches..... 76
Driver Monitoring Systems (DMS)*.... 173
Driving Precautions..... 116
Driving Safety Precautions..... 103
Driving Safety Systems..... 168

E

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).... 112
Electronic Smart Key..... 46
Emergency Call (E-Call)*..... 79
Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)..... 149
Emergency Shutdown System..... 218
Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key..... 58

F

Fire Prevention..... 108
Forward Collision Warning (FCW) 135
Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA).... 141
Front Cross Traffic Braking (FCTB).... 142
Front Passenger Airbag Switch..... 77
Front Seat Cup Holders..... 191
Function Definition..... 185
Fuses..... 215

G

Gear Shift Controls..... 111

General Charging Troubleshooting 85
Glove Box..... 190
Grab Handles..... 192

H

Hazard Warning Light Switch..... 78
Head-up Display (HUD)*..... 160
High-Voltage Battery..... 97
Hood..... 208

I

If a Tire Goes Flat..... 222
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted 218
If the High-Voltage Battery Leaks. 219
If the Vehicle Needs Towing..... 220
Indicators/Warning Lights..... 35
Infotainment Touchscreen..... 178
Intelligence Torque Adaption Control (iTAC) System*..... 172
Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC).... 132
Intelligent High Beam Control (IHBC) 159
Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC) 134
Interior Cleaning..... 204
Interior Light Switch..... 80

L

Lane Departure Assist (LDA)..... 146
LCD Instrument Cluster..... 34
Light Switches..... 72
Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key..... 50
Low-Voltage Battery..... 100

M

Maintenance Instructions..... 198
Maintenance Plan..... 198
Mode Switches..... 76
Model and Serial Number of Drive Motor..... 233

O

Odometer Switch..... 76

P

Paint Maintenance Tips..... 201
Power Window Switches..... 74

R

Rear Collision Warning (RCW)..... 154
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)..... 156
Rear Cross Traffic Braking (RCTB) 157
Regular Maintenance..... 200

S

Saving Energy and Extending Vehicle Service Life..... 105
Seat Belt Overview..... 12
Seat Precautions..... 60
Seatback Pockets..... 192
Self-Maintenance Precautions..... 206
Smart Access and Start System..... 58
Smart Charging..... 91
Snow Chains..... 117
Starting the Vehicle..... 109
Steering Mode..... 68
Steering Wheel Switches..... 65
Sun Visor..... 192
Sunshade Switches..... 78

T

Tires..... 212
Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)..... 144

U

USB Ports..... 193
Using AC Charging Piles..... 89
Using DC Charging Piles..... 90
Using Mode 2 Charging Cable..... 86
Using Seat Belts..... 12

V

Vehicle Cleaning..... 202
Vehicle Corrosion Prevention..... 201
Vehicle Fire Rescue..... 219
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 232
Vehicle Nameplate..... 233
Vehicle Servicing..... 200
Vehicle Storage Precautions..... 208
Vehicle Use Suggestions..... 104

W

Wading into Water..... 106
Warning Labels..... 233
Windshield Washer..... 210
Wiper Blades..... 211
Wiper Instructions..... 69
Wiper Switch..... 68
Wireless Phone Charger..... 194

Abbreviations

Abbreviations

Terminology	Full Name	Terminology	Full Name
ELR	Emergency Locking Retractor	ECU	Electronic Control Unit
ISOFIX	International Standards Organization Fix	EDR	Event Data Recorder
E-Call	Emergency Call	EPB	Electronic Parking Brake
AVH	Auto Vehicle Hold	SOC	State of Charge
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control	ICC	Intelligent Cruise Control
FCW	Forward Collision Warning	AEB	Automatic Emergency Braking
FCTA	Front Cross Traffic Alert	FCTB	Front Cross Traffic Braking
TSR	Traffic Sign Recognition	ISLC	Intelligent Speed Limit Control
IHBC	Intelligent High Beam Control	LDA	Lane Departure Assist
LDP	Lane Departure Prevention	LDW	Lane Departure Warning
ELKA	Emergent Lane Keeping Assist	BSA	Blind Spot Assist
AVAS	Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System	HUD	Head-Up Display
BSD	Blind Spot Detection	RCTA	Rear Cross Traffic Alert
RCTB	Rear Cross Traffic Braking	RCW	Rear Collision Warning
DOW	Door Open Warning	VDC	Vehicle Dynamics Control
TCS	Traction Control System	HHC	Hill Hold Control
HBA	Hydraulic Brake Assist	CDP	Controlled Deceleration for Parking Brake
CST	Comfort Parking	ESC	Electronic Stability Controller
MCB	Multi-Collision Brake	DMS	Driver Monitoring System
TPMS	Tire Pressure Monitoring System	VIN	Vehicle Identification Number
MAX	Maximum	MIN	Minimum

BUILD YOUR DREAMS

Edition date: 07.2024 EN_V0